

DocuPrint M205 b/M205 f/M205 fw



User Guide

Contents

Preface	9
Trademarks and Document Disclaimer	10
Types of Manuals	11
Using This Guide	12
Organization	13
Conventions	14
Safety Notes	15
Electrical Safety	16
Machine Installation	18
Operational Safety	21
Consumable	23
Warning and Caution Labels	24
Environment	25
Regulation	26
Radio Frequency Emissions (Class B)	26
Product Safety Certification (CB)	26
Illegal Copies and Printouts	27
Product Features	28
1 Specifications	29
Copy Function	30
Print Function	33
Scan Function	34
Fax Function (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	36
Direct Fax Function (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	37
2 Basic Operation	39
Main Components	40
Front View	41
Rear View	43
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (DocuPrint M205 f/M 205 fw Only)	44
Operator Panel	45
Turning On the Printer	47
Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel	48
Printing a Panel Settings Page	49
The Operator Panel	50
The Printer Setting Utility	51
Power Saver Mode	52
Exiting the Power Saver Mode	53

3	Printer Management Software	55
	Print and Scan Drivers.....	56
	CentreWare Internet Services (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	57
	Creating an Administrative Password	58
	Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only).....	59
	SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)	60
	Launcher (Windows Only)	61
	Address Book Editor (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only).....	63
	Express Scan Manager	64
	DocuWorks (Windows Only) (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	65
4	Printer Connection and Software Installation.....	67
	Overview of Network Setup and Configuration (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	68
	Connecting Your Printer	69
	Connecting Printer to Computer or Network.....	70
	Setting the IP Address (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only).....	73
	TCP/IP and IP Addresses.....	74
	Automatically Setting the Printer's IP Address	75
	Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address	76
	Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode).....	77
	Verifying the IP Settings	80
	Printing and Checking the System Settings Page	81
	Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows.....	82
	Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status (for Network Connection Setup) (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only).....	83
	Inserting the Software Pack CD-ROM	85
	USB Connection Setup.....	86
	Network Connection Setup (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only).....	87
	Configuring Wireless Settings (DocuPrint M205 fw Only)	88
	Setting Up for Shared Printing (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	119
	Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X.....	127
	Configuring Wireless Settings on the Operator Panel (DocuPrint M205 fw Only)	128
	Installing the Drivers and Software	133
5	Printing Basics	137
	About Print Media	138
	Print Media Usage Guidelines	139
	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Guidelines (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	140
	Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer	141
	Print Media Storage Guidelines	142
	Supported Print Media.....	143
	Usable Print Media	144

Loading Print Media.....	147
Capacity.....	148
Print Media Dimensions.....	149
Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).....	150
Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI).....	158
Manual Duplex Printing (Windows Print Driver Only).....	163
Using the Output Tray Extension.....	167
Setting Paper Sizes and Types.....	168
Setting Paper Sizes.....	169
Setting Paper Types.....	170
Printing.....	171
Printing from the Computer.....	172
Canceling a Print Job.....	173
Selecting Printing Options.....	174
Printing Custom Size Paper.....	179
Checking Status of Print Job.....	181
Printing a Report Page.....	182
Printer Settings.....	183
Printing with Web Services on Devices (WSD) (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only).....	186
Adding Roles of Print Services.....	187
Printer Setup.....	188
6 Copying.....	189
Loading Paper for Copying.....	190
Preparing a Document.....	191
Making Copies From the Document Glass.....	192
Making Copies From the ADF (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only).....	194
Setting Copy Options.....	195
Number of Copies.....	196
Collated.....	197
Reduce/Enlarge.....	198
Document Size.....	200
Document Type.....	201
Lighten/Darken.....	202
Sharpness.....	203
Auto Exposure.....	204
Multiple Up.....	205
Margin Top/Bottom.....	207
Margin Left/Right.....	208
Margin Middle.....	209
Changing the Default Settings.....	210
7 Scanning.....	211
Scanning Overview.....	212

Scanning to a USB Connected Computer	213
Scanning From the Operator Panel	214
Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver	216
Scanning Using the WIA Driver	218
Using a Scanner on the Network (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)	220
Overview	221
Confirming a Login name and Password	223
Specifying a Destination to Store the Document	225
Configuring the Printer Settings	236
Sending the Scanned File to the Network	243
Scanning to a USB Storage Device	244
Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)	
245	
Setting a Fax/E-mail Address Book	246
Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File	248
Adjusting Scanning Options	249
Adjusting the Default Scan Settings	250
Changing the Scan Settings for an Individual Job	252
8 Faxing (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	253
Connecting the Telephone Line	254
Configuring Fax Initial Settings	256
Setting Your Region	257
Setting the Printer ID	258
Setting the Time and Date	259
Changing the Clock Mode	260
Sending a Fax	261
Loading an Original Document on the ADF	262
Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass	263
Resolution	264
Document Type	265
Lighten/Darken	266
Inserting a Pause	267
Sending a Fax Automatically	268
Sending a Fax Manually	269
Confirming Transmissions	270
Automatic Redialing	271
Sending a Delayed Fax	272
Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)	273
For Windows	274
For Mac OS X	277
Receiving a Fax	279
About Receiving Modes	280
Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes	281
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode	282
Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode	283

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode	284
Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone	285
Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode	286
Receiving Faxes in the Memory	287
Polling Receive	288
Automatic Dialing.....	289
Speed Dialing	290
Storing a Number for Speed Dialing	291
Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial.....	292
Group Dialing.....	293
Setting Group Dial	294
Editing Group Dial.....	295
Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)	296
Printing an Address Book List.....	297
Other Ways to Fax.....	298
Using the Secure Receiving Mode	299
Using an Answering Machine	300
Using a Computer Modem	301
Setting Sounds	302
Speaker Volume	303
Ringer Volume	304
Specifying the Fax Settings.....	305
Changing the Fax Settings Options	306
Available Fax Setting Options.....	307
Changing Setting Options.....	310
Printing a Report.....	311
9 Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad	313
Understanding the Printer Menus.....	314
Report / List	315
Meter Reading	316
Admin Menu.....	317
Defaults Settings.....	339
Tray Settings.....	348
Panel Language.....	351
Panel Lock Function	352
Enabling the Panel Lock	353
Disabling the Panel Lock	354
Limiting Access to Printer Operations	355
Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode.....	356
Resetting to Factory Defaults	357
Using the Numeric Keypad.....	358
Entering Characters (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only).....	359
Changing Numbers or Names	360

10	Troubleshooting	361
	Clearing Jams.....	362
	Avoiding Jams	363
	Identifying the Location of Paper Jams.....	364
	Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw).....	365
	Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer.....	369
	Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer	370
	Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray	372
	Jam Problems.....	375
	Basic Printer Problems	376
	Display Problems.....	377
	Printing Problems	378
	Print Quality Problems.....	380
	The Output Is Too Light.....	381
	Toner Smears or Print Comes Off/Stain on Back Side.....	382
	Random Spots/Blurred Images.....	383
	The Entire Output Is Blank.....	384
	Streaks Appear on the Output	385
	Mottle	386
	Ghosting	387
	Fog.....	388
	Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)	389
	Auger Mark	390
	Wrinkled/Stained Paper	391
	The Top Margin Is Incorrect.....	392
	Protrudent/Bumpy Paper	393
	Copy Problem.....	394
	Copy Quality Problems.....	395
	Fax Problems (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	396
	Scanning Problems	398
	Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems	400
	Other Problems	401
	Understanding Printer Messages	402
	Contacting Service	410
	Getting Help.....	411
	LCD Panel Messages	412
	SimpleMonitor Alerts.....	413
	Obtaining the Product Information	414
	Non-Genuine Mode	415
	The Operator Panel	416
	The Printer Setting Utility	417
11	Maintenance	419
	Cleaning the Printer.....	420
	Cleaning the Scanner	421

Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	423
Replacing the Toner Cartridge	424
Overview	425
Removing the Toner Cartridge	426
Installing a Toner Cartridge	428
Ordering Supplies	430
Consumables	431
When to Order a Toner Cartridge	432
Recycling Supplies	433
Storing Consumables	434
Managing the Printer	435
Checking or Managing the Printer with CentreWare Internet Services (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	436
Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)	437
Checking Printer Status Through E-mail (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	438
Conserving Supplies	439
Checking Page Counts	440
Moving the Printer	441
 Contacting Fuji Xerox	 445
Technical Support	446
Online Services	447

Preface

Thank you for purchasing the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw/M205 b.

This guide is intended for users who use the printer for the first time, and provides all the necessary operating information about the printer, copier, scanner, and facsimile functions.

Please read this guide to achieve the best performance from this printer.

This guide assumes you are familiar with computers and the basics of network operation and configuration.

After reading this guide, keep it safe and handy for future reference.

DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw/M205 b User Guide Help

Copyright© 2011 by Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

June 2011 (Edition 2)


No. ME4965E2-2

Trademarks and Document Disclaimer

Apple®, Bonjour®, ColorSync®, Macintosh®, and Mac OS® are trademarks of Apple Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft®, Windows Vista®, Windows®, and Windows Server® are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

All product/brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective holders.

In this manual, safety instructions are preceded by the symbol . Always read and follow the instructions before performing the required procedures.

Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any breakdown of machines due to infection of computer virus or computer hacking.

WARNING:

This equipment will be inoperable when mains power fails.

IMPORTANT:

1. This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied or modified in whole or part, without the written consent of the publisher.
2. Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
3. We welcome any comments on ambiguities, errors, omissions, or missing pages.
4. Never attempt any procedure on the machine that is not specifically described in this manual. Unauthorized operation can cause faults or accidents. Fuji Xerox is not liable for any problems resulting from unauthorized operation of the equipment.
5. Decompiling this manual is prohibited.

An export of this product is strictly controlled in accordance with Laws concerning Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade of Japan and/or the export control regulations of the United States.

XEROX, the sphere of connectivity design, and DocuPrint are trademarks or registered trademarks of Xerox Corporation in the U.S. or Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

DocuWorks is a trademark of Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

All Xerox and Fuji Xerox product names are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Xerox Corporation or Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Types of Manuals

Safety Guide	Describes the information you need to know before using the printer and to operate the printer safely.
Setup Guide	Provides step-by-step instructions on how to set up your printer including the initial settings of the Fax and Scan functions. (The fax feature is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.) Also describes how to setup wireless network. (Wireless LAN function is available only on the DocuPrint M205 fw.)
User Guide (HTML files) (this guide)	Describes how to get ready to print and set various features. It also covers the operator panel menus, troubleshooting tips, and maintenance information. This guide is on the <i>Software Pack CD-ROM</i> .
Operator Panel Guide	Describes the icons assigned to the buttons or indicators on the operator panel.

Using This Guide

This section includes:

- ["Organization" on page 13](#)
- ["Conventions" on page 14](#)

■ Organization

This guide is organized into the following chapters. The summary of each chapter is as follows:

1 Specifications	Describes the printer specifications.
2 Basic Operation	Describes the main components of the printer, the power saver mode, and how to turn on the printer.
3 Printer Management Software	Describes the software available for the printer.
4 Printer Connection and Software Installation	Describes the basic information about how to connect the printer to your computer and how to install the print driver.
5 Printing Basics	Describes the supported paper, how to load paper, and how to print data using various print features.
6 Copying	Describes how to copy documents and the adjustment features.
7 Scanning	Describes how to set and use the Scan features.
8 Faxing (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	Describes how to set and use the Fax features. The Fax features are available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.
9 Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad	Describes the setting items available on the operator panel, their setup procedures, and how to use the numeric keypad.
10 Troubleshooting	Describes the troubleshooting tips for printer problems such as paper jams.
11 Maintenance	Describes how to clean the printer, how to replace toner cartridges, and how to see the printer status.
12 Contacting Fuji Xerox	Describes support information.

■ Conventions

- 1 In this guide, personal computers and workstations are collectively called “computers”.
- 2 The following terms are used throughout this guide:

IMPORTANT:

- Important information that must be read and followed.



NOTE:



- Additional information that merits emphasis.

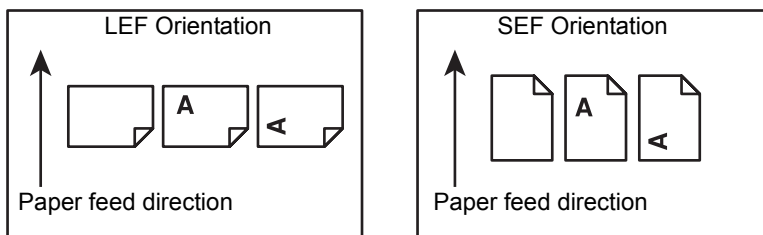
See also:

- References within this guide.

- 3 Orientation of documents or paper is described in this guide as follows:

 , Long Edge Feed (LEF): Loading the document or paper with the long edge into the machine as shown in the illustration below.

 , Short Edge Feed (SEF): Loading the document or paper with the short edge into the machine as shown in the illustration below.




- 4 The screen shots and illustrations in this guide are those of the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw unless there is a note. Some of the items in the screen shots and illustrations may not be displayed or available depending on your printer model.
- 5 Some features are not available on some models.

Safety Notes
























Before using this product, read “Safety Notes” carefully for safety use.

This product and recommended supplies have been tested and found to comply with strict safety requirements including safety agency approvals and compliance with environmental standards. Follow the following instructions for safety use.

 **WARNING:**

- Any unauthorized alteration including an addition of new functions or connection to external devices may not be covered by the product warranty. Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for more information.

Follow all warning instructions marked on this product. The warning marks stand for the followings:

 DANGER	Used for item that if not followed strictly, can lead death or severe or fatal injuries and the possibility to do it is comparatively high.					
 WARNING	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can lead to severe or fatal injuries.					
 CAUTION	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can cause injuries to user or damages to machine.					
<p> : A symbol for items to pay attention to when handling machine. Follow instructions carefully to use machine safely.</p>						
 Caution	 Flammable	 Explodable	 Electric shock	 Heated surface	 Moving object	 Pinched fingers
<p> : A symbol for prohibited items. Follow instructions carefully to avoid any dangerous acts.</p>						
 Prohibited	 No fire	 Do not touch	 Do not use in bathroom	 Do not tear down	 Keep away from wet	 Never touch with wet hand
<p> : A symbol for items that must be performed. Follow instructions carefully to carry out these essential tasks.</p>						
 Instructions	 Unplug	 Ground/Earth				

■ Electrical Safety

WARNING

This product shall be operated by the power source as indicated on the product's data plate. Consult your local power company to check if your power source meets the requirements.



WARNING:

- **Connect this product to a protective earth circuit.**

This product is supplied with a plug that has a protective earth pin. The plug fits only into an earthed electrical outlet. This is a safety feature. If the plug doesn't fit to the outlet, contact an electrician to replace the outlet to avoid risk of electric shock. Never use an earthed adapter plug to connect the product to the electrical outlet that has no earth connection terminal.

Improper connection of a grounding conductor may cause electric shock.



Plug the power cord directly into a grounded electrical outlet. To prevent overheat and a fire accident, do not use an extension cord, a multi-plug adaptor or a multiple connector. Consult your local Fuji Xerox representative to check if an outlet is grounded.



Connect this product to a branch circuit or an outlet that has larger capacity than the rated ampere and voltage of this product. See the data plate on the rear panel of this product for its rated ampere and voltage.



Never touch the power cord with wet hands. It may cause electric shock.



Do not place an object on the power cord.



Always keep the plug connection free of dust. The dusty and damp environment may bring about minute electric current in a connector. It may generate heat and eventually cause a fire accident.



To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, only use the power cord supplied with this product or the ones designated by Fuji Xerox.

The power cord is exclusive use for this product. Do not use it for any other product.

Do not damage or alter the power cord. Damage and alteration may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident.

If the power cord is damaged or insulated wires are exposed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its replacement. Do not use a damaged or uninsulated cord to avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident.

CAUTION



When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.



Do not unplug or re-plug this product with the switch on. Plugging and unplugging a live connector may deform the plug and generate heat, and eventually cause a fire accident.



Hold the plug not the cord when unplugging this product, or it may damage the cord and cause electric shock or a fire accident.



For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, switch off and unplug the product when it (i.e., fax function) is not used over weekends or long holidays.

Please note that it cannot receive fax message during switch-off.



Once a month, switch off this product and check if

- the power cord is plugged firmly into an electrical outlet;
- the plug is not excessively heated, rusted or bent;
- the plug and electrical outlet are free of dust; and
- the power cord is not cracked or worn down.

Once you notice any unusual condition, switch off and unplug this product first and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

■ Machine Installation

WARNING



Do not locate this product where people might step on or trip over the power cord.

Friction or excessive pressure may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident.

CAUTION



Never locate this product in the following places:

- Near radiators or any other heat sources
 - Near volatile flammable materials such as curtains
 - In the hot, humid, dusty or poorly ventilated environment
 - In the place receiving direct sunlight
 - Near cookers or humidifiers
-



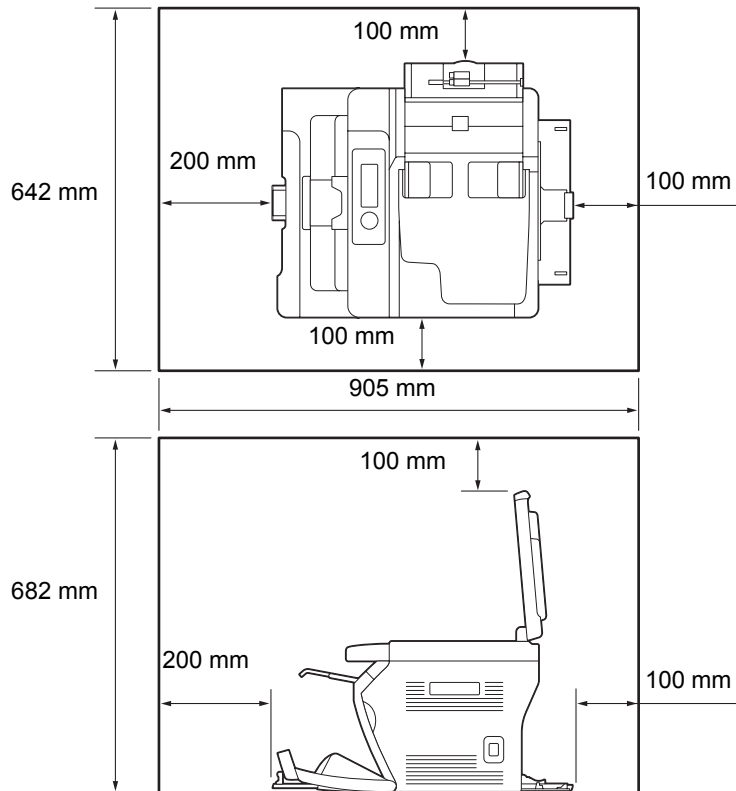
Locate this product on a level and sturdy surface that can withstand a weight of 9.9 Kg (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw) / 8.9 Kg (DocuPrint M205 b). Otherwise, if tilted, the product may fall over and cause injuries.



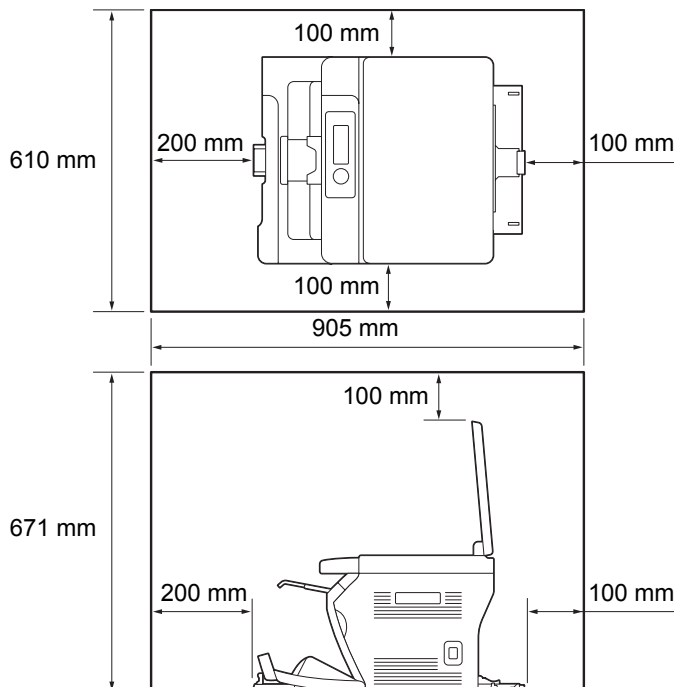
Locate this product in a well-ventilated area. Do not obstruct ventilation openings of the product.

Keep the minimum clearance as follows for ventilation and an access to the power plug. Unplug the product if an abnormal condition is noted.

DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw

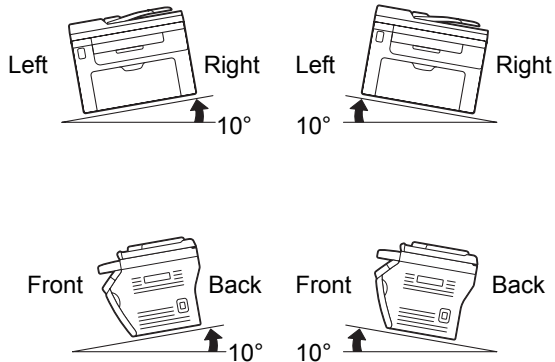


DocuPrint M205 b





Do not incline the product at more than 10 degree angle. Otherwise, it may fall over and cause injuries.



The illustrations show the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.



To bundle wires and cables, always use the cable ties and spiral tubes that Fuji Xerox supplies. Otherwise, it may cause some defects.

Others



To keep this product in a good performance and condition, always use it in the following environment:

- Temperature: 10 – 32 °C
- Humidity: 10 – 85%

When the product is left in a chilly room and the room is rapidly warmed up by heater, dew condensation may form inside the product and cause a partial deletion on printing.

■ Operational Safety

WARNING



The operator's product maintenance procedures are described in the customer documentation supplied with this product. Do not carry out any other maintenance procedures not described in the documentation.



This product features safety design not to allow operators access to hazard areas. The hazard areas are isolated from operators by covers or protectors which require a tool to remove. To prevent electric shock and injuries, never remove those covers and protectors.



To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, switch off and unplug the product promptly in the following conditions, then contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

- The product emits smoke or its surface is unusually hot.
- The product emits unusual noise or odor.
- The power cord is cracked or worn down.
- A circuit breaker, fuse or any other safety device is activated.
- Any liquid is spilled into the product.
- The product is soaked in water.
- Any part of the product is damaged.



Do not insert any object into slots or openings of this product.
Do not place any of the followings on the product:

- Liquid container such as flower vases or coffee cups
- Metal parts such as staples or clips
- Heavy objects

If liquid is spilled over or metal parts are slipped into the product, it may cause electric shock or a fire accident.



Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.



When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners, or it may catch fire and cause explosion.



Never play the CD-ROM supplied with the product on an audio player. Always use a CD-ROM player. Otherwise, large sound may damage audio players or your ears.

CAUTION



Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product.

To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.



Keep electrical and mechanical safety interlocks active. Keep the safety interlocks away from magnetic materials. Magnetic materials may accidentally activate the product and cause injuries or electric shock.



Do not attempt to remove a paper jammed deeply inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around a Fusing Unit or a heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product promptly and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.



Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.



Ventilate well during extended operation or mass copying. It may affect the office air environment due to odor such as ozone in a poorly ventilated room.

Provide proper ventilation to ensure the comfortable and safe environment.

■ Consumable

WARNING



Store all consumables in accordance with the instructions given on its package or container.



Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off spilled toner. Never use a vacuum cleaner for the spills. It may catch fire by electric sparks inside the vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.



Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.

If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.

CAUTION



Keep toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.



When replacing toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.



If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water.

If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary.

If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water.

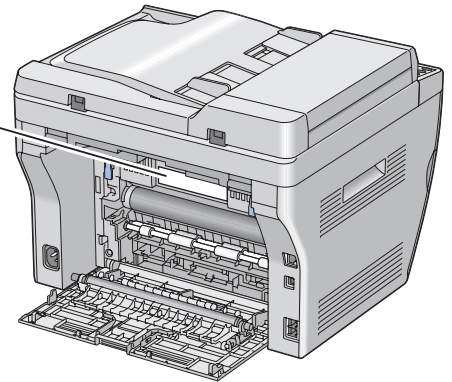
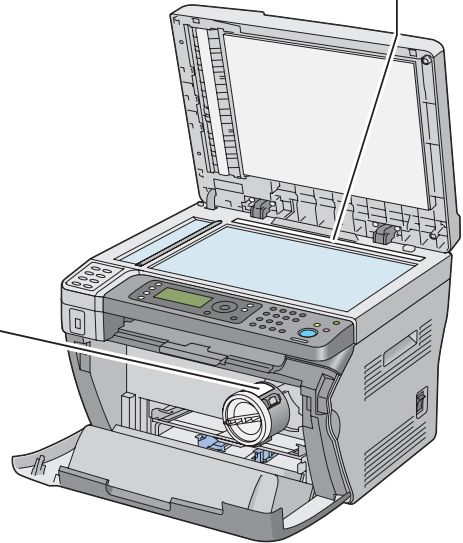
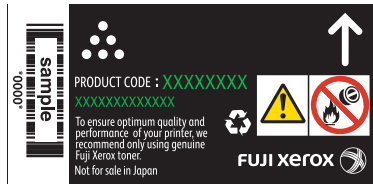
If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

■ Warning and Caution Labels

Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product.

To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.

⚠ CAUTION Do not stare at light. It may cause discomfort or irritation to your eyes. ⚠ 注意 请勿直视曝光光源，以免造成眼睛疲劳及伤害眼睛。 ⚠ ข้อควรระวัง ห้ามจ้องมองแสงไฟ เพราะอาจทำให้ปวดหรือระคายเคืองดวงตา
 ⚠ 注意 ランプの光を見つめないでください。目の疲れや痛みの原因となることがあります。 ⚠ 注意 請勿直視曝光光源，以免造成眼睛疲勞及傷害眼睛。 ⚠ 주의 광원을 보지 않아 주십시오. 눈의 피로 또는 통증의 원인이 될 수 있습니다.



The illustrations show the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.

Environment

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) to make recycle parts, recycle materials or energy recovery.
- Proper disposal is required for toner cartridges no longer needed. Do not open toner cartridges containers. Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Regulation

■ Radio Frequency Emissions (Class B)



This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to the International Standard for Electromagnetic Interference (CISPR Publ. 22) and Radiocommunications Act 1992 in Australia/New Zealand. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning this product off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between this product and the receiver.
- Connect this product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes and modifications to this product not specifically approved by Fuji Xerox may void the user's authority to operate this product.

■ Product Safety Certification (CB)

This product is certified by the following agency using the safety standards listed.

Agency	Standard
Intertek	IEC60950-1:ed. 2

Illegal Copies and Printouts

Copying or printing certain documents may be illegal in your country. Penalties of fines or imprisonment may be imposed on those found guilty. The following are examples of items that may be illegal to copy or print in your country.

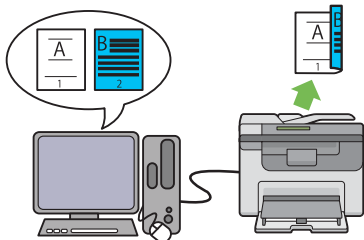
- Currency
- Banknotes and checks
- Bank and government bonds and securities
- Passports and identification cards
- Copyright material or trademarks without the consent of the owner
- Postage stamps and other negotiable instruments

This list is not inclusive and no liability is assumed for either its completeness or accuracy. In case of doubt, contact your legal counsel.

Product Features

This section describes the product features and indicates their links.

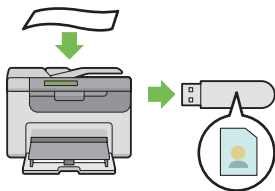
Manual Duplex Print



Duplex print is to print two or more pages on the front and back sides of a single sheet of paper manually. This feature allows you to reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, see ["Manual Duplex Printing \(Windows Print Driver Only\)" on page 163](#).

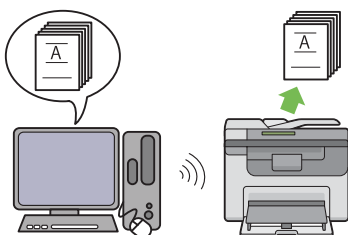
Scanning to a USB Storage Device



You do not need a computer to connect your USB storage device to save the scanned data. Insert your USB storage device in the port on the printer, and save the scanned data directly to your USB storage device.

For more information, see ["Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 244](#).

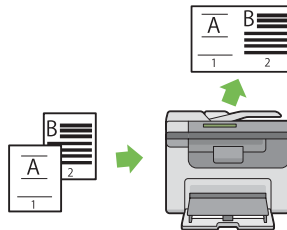
Printing Through Wireless Connection (Wireless Print) (DocuPrint M205 fw Only)



The Wireless LAN feature on your printer allows you to install the printer at any location, and enables printing without a wired connection to your computer.

For more information, see ["Configuring Wireless Settings \(DocuPrint M205 fw Only\)" on page 88](#).

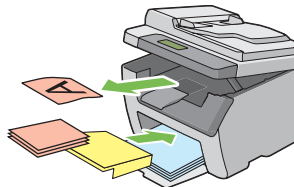
Multiple Up (2-in-1 Copy)



Multiple Up copy enables you to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. This feature allows you to reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, see ["Multiple Up" on page 205](#).

Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)



Print media loaded on the PSI is given precedence over those loaded on the multipurpose feeder (MPF). Using the PSI allows you to use other types or sizes of print media preferentially over the regular print media loaded on the MPF.

For more information, see ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 158](#).

Specifications

This chapter lists the main specifications of the printer. Note that the specifications of the product may change without prior notice.

NOTE:




- Some features are not available on some models.

This chapter includes:

- ["Copy Function" on page 30](#)
- ["Print Function" on page 33](#)
- ["Scan Function" on page 34](#)
- ["Fax Function \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 36](#)
- ["Direct Fax Function \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 37](#)

Copy Function

Type	Console
Memory	128 MB
HDD	—
Scanning Resolution	DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw: Document glass: 600 × 600 dpi Automatic document feeder: 600 × 300 dpi DocuPrint M205 b: Document glass: 600 × 600 dpi
Printing Resolution	Standard: 600 × 600 dpi High Resolution: 1200 × 1200 dpi* *: When printing in high resolution mode, printing speed may be reduced due to image quality adjustment. Printing speed may also be reduced depending on documents.
Halftone	256 grayscale gradation
Warm-up Time	36 seconds or less* *: The values are based on a room temperature of 20 °C and on the factory default setting. IMPORTANT: • It may take longer due to the image quality adjustment.
Original Paper Size	DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw: Document glass: The maximum size is 215.9 × 297 mm for both sheets and books. Automatic document feeder: The maximum size is 215.9 × 355.6 mm. DocuPrint M205 b: Document glass: The maximum size is 215.9 × 297 mm for both sheets and books.
Output Paper Size	Multipurpose feeder: Maximum: Legal Minimum: 76.2 × 148.5 mm (3 × 5.85") Priority sheet inserter: Maximum: Legal Minimum: 76.2 × 190.5 mm (3 × 7.5") Image loss width: Top edge, 4 mm or less; bottom edge, 4 mm or less; left and right edges, 4 mm or less
Output Paper Weight	Multipurpose feeder: 60 – 163 gsm (for postcard 60 – 190 gsm is available) Priority sheet inserter: 60 – 163 gsm IMPORTANT: • Use paper recommended by Fuji Xerox. Copying may not be performed correctly depending on the conditions. For more information, see "Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer" on page 141 .
First Copy Output Time	24 seconds (for A4 <input type="checkbox"/> /standard mode)


Reduction/Enlargement	<p>Size-for-Size: 1:1 ± 1.3%</p> <p>Preset %: 1:0.500, 1:0.707, 1:0.816, 1:1.225, 1:1.414, 1:2.000</p> <p>Variable %: 1:0.25 - 1:4.00 (1% increments)</p>
Continuous Copy Speed	<p>DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw:</p> <p>Document glass: Monochrome: A4: 24 sheets/minute</p> <p>Automatic document feeder: Monochrome: A4: 8.5 sheets/minute</p> <p>DocuPrint M205 b: Document glass: Monochrome: A4: 24 sheets/minute</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The speed may be reduced due to image quality adjustment. • The performance may be reduced depending on the paper type or paper tray.
Paper Tray Capacity	<p>Standard: 150 sheets (Multipurpose feeder) + 10 sheets (Priority sheet inserter)</p> <p>Maximum paper capacity: 160 sheets (standard)</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)
Continuous Copy	<p>99 images</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The machine may pause temporarily to perform image stabilization.
Output Tray Capacity	<p>DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw:</p> <p>Center output tray: Approximately 100 sheets (A4 )</p> <p>Document output tray: Approximately 15 sheets (A4 )</p> <p>DocuPrint M205 b: Center output tray: Approximately 100 sheets (A4 )</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)
Power Supply	<p>AC 220 – 240 V ± 10%/110 – 127 V ± 10%, 4/8A for both 50/60 Hz ± 3Hz</p>

<p>Power Consumption</p>	<p>DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw: Maximum power consumption: 950 W Sleep mode: 3.5 W or less Low Power mode: 8.5 W or less Standby mode: 58 W or less</p> <p>DocuPrint M205 b: Maximum power consumption: 950 W Sleep mode: 3.5 W or less Low Power mode: 7.5 W or less Standby mode: 58 W or less</p>
<p>Dimensions</p>	<p>DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw: Width 410 × Depth 389^{*1} × Height 318 mm</p> <p>DocuPrint M205 b: Width 410 × Depth 389^{*1} × Height 299 mm</p> <p>*: When the front cover is closed.</p>
<p>Machine Weight</p>	<p>DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw: 9.9 kg</p> <p>DocuPrint M205 b: 8.9 kg</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The weight of paper is not included. • The weight of the toner cartridge is included.
<p>Space Requirement</p>	<p>DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw: Width 642× Depth 905^{*1} mm</p> <p>DocuPrint M205 b: Width 610 × Depth 905^{*1} mm</p> <p>*: When the front cover and rear cover are open.</p>

Print Function

Type	Built-in
Continuous Print Speed	Same as the Copy Function
Print Resolution	<p>Standard: 600 × 600 dpi</p> <p>High Resolution: 1200 × 1200 dpi*</p> <p>*: When printing in high resolution mode, printing speed may be reduced due to image quality adjustment. Printing speed may also be reduced depending on documents.</p>
PDL	— (Host-based)
Protocol (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)	<p>DocuPrint M205 f: Ethernet (standard): TCP/IP (lpd, Port9100, WSD)</p> <p>DocuPrint M205 fw: Ethernet (standard): TCP/IP (lpd, Port9100, WSD) IEEE802.11b/g (standard)</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • WSD stands for Web Services on Devices. • WSD is available only on Windows Vista® or Windows® 7.
Operating System	<p>Standard: GDI driver</p> <p>Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows® 7, Microsoft® Windows® XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Mac OS® X 10.4.11/10.5.8 – 10.6</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For information about the latest supported OS, contact our Customer Support Center.
Connectivity	<p>DocuPrint M205 f: Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0*</p> <p>DocuPrint M205 fw: Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0*, IEEE802.11b/g</p> <p>DocuPrint M205 b: Standard: USB 2.0*</p> <p>*: USB 2.0 is supported by the following: Windows® XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Vista®, Windows Server® 2008, Windows® 7, Windows® XP x64, Windows Server® 2003 x64, Windows Vista® x64, Windows Server® 2008 x64, Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Windows® 7 x64, and Mac OS® X 10.4.11/10.5.8 - 10.6.</p>

Scan Function

Type	Color scanner
Original Paper Size	Same as the Copy Function
Scanning Resolution	1200 × 1200 dpi, 600 × 600 dpi, 300 × 300 dpi, 200 × 200 dpi
Scanning Halftone	Monochrome : 8 bit Color : 24 bit
Scanning Speed (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)	Monochrome : 8.5 sheets/minute Color : 2 sheets/minute (For ITU-T No.1 Chart A4  200 dpi) IMPORTANT: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The scanning speed varies depending on documents.
Connectivity	DocuPrint M205 f: Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0* DocuPrint M205 fw: Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0*, IEEE802.11b/g DocuPrint M205 b: Standard: USB 2.0* *: USB 2.0 is supported by the following: Windows [®] XP, Windows Server [®] 2003, Windows Vista [®] , Windows Server [®] 2008, Windows [®] 7, Windows [®] XP x64, Windows Server [®] 2003 x64, Windows Vista [®] x64, Windows Server [®] 2008 x64, Windows Server [®] 2008 R2 x64, Windows [®] 7 x64, and Mac OS [®] X 10.4.11/10.5.8 - 10.6.

<p>Scan to PC</p>	<p>Protocol (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only): TCP/IP (SMB, FTP)</p> <p>Operating System:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows® 7, Microsoft® Windows XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Mac OS® X 10.4.11/10.5.8 – 10.6 <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Fuji Xerox Web site. <p>File Format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TIFF (MMR, JPEG) JPEG PDF (v 1.6)
<p>Scan to e-mail (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)</p>	<p>Protocol: TCP/IP (SMTP, POP3)</p> <p>File Format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Monochrome binary: TIFF, JPEG, PDF Gray scale/full color: TIFF, JPEG, PDF

Fax Function (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Send Document Size	Document glass: Maximum: A4/Letter Automatic document feeder: Maximum: Legal
Recording Paper Size	Maximum: Legal Minimum: A4/Letter
Transmission Time	3 seconds IMPORTANT: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When transmitting an A4 size 700-character document in the standard quality (8 x 3.85 lines/mm) and high speed mode (28.8 kbps or above: JBIG). This is only the transmission speed for image information and does not include the controlling time for the communication. Note that the actual transmission time depends on the content of documents, the machine that the recipient uses, and the status of the communication line.
Transmission Mode	ITU-T Super G3/G3 ECM/G3
Scanning Resolution	Standard: 203 × 98 dpi (8 × 3.85 dots/mm) Fine: 203 × 196 dpi (8 × 7.7 dots/mm) Super Fine (200 × 400 dpi): 203 × 392 dpi (8 × 15.4 dots/mm) Super Fine (400 × 400 dpi): 406 × 392 dpi (16 × 15.4 dots/mm)
Coding Method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
Transmission Speed	G3: 33.6/31.2/28.8/26.4/24.0/21.6/19.2/16.8/14.4/12.0/9.6/7.2/4.8/2.4kbps
No. of Fax Lines	PSTN, PBX. Leased line (3.4KHz/2-wire) RJ-11, 1 line

Direct Fax Function (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Document Size	A4, Letter, Folio, Legal
Transmission Speed	Same as the Fax Function
Transmission Resolution	<p>Standard: 203 × 98 dpi (8 × 3.85 dots/mm)</p> <p>High Quality: 203 × 196 dpi (8 × 7.7 dots/mm)</p> <p>Superfine: 203 × 392 dpi (8 × 15.4 dots/mm)</p> <p>Super-High Image Quality: 406 × 392 dpi (16 × 15.4 dots/mm)</p>
Applicable Lines	Same as the Fax Function
Operating System	<p>Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows® 7, Microsoft® Windows® XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Mac OS® X 10.4.11/10.5.8 – 10.6</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Fuji Xerox Web site.

Basic Operation

This chapter includes:

- ["Main Components" on page 40](#)
- ["Turning On the Printer" on page 47](#)
- ["Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel" on page 48](#)
- ["Printing a Panel Settings Page" on page 49](#)
- ["Power Saver Mode" on page 52](#)

Main Components

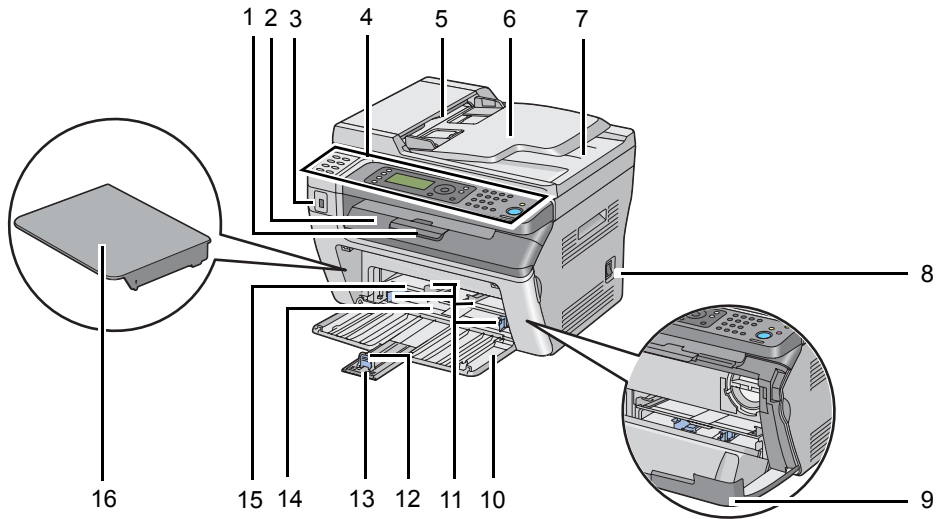
This section provides an overview of your printer.

This section includes:

- ["Front View" on page 41](#)
- ["Rear View" on page 43](#)
- ["Automatic Document Feeder \(ADF\) \(DocuPrint M205 f/M 205 fw Only\)" on page 44](#)
- ["Operator Panel" on page 45](#)

■ Front View

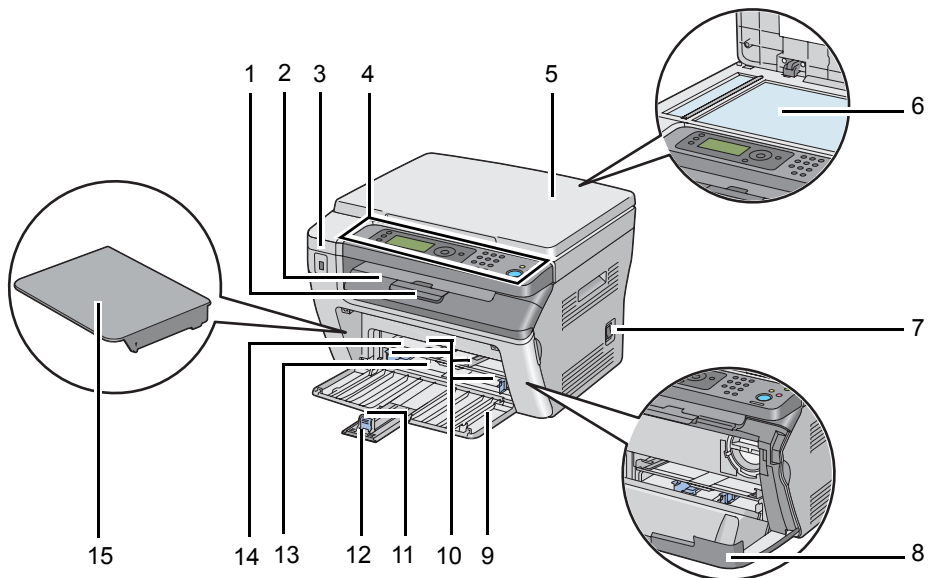
DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw



1	Output Tray Extension	2	Center Output Tray
3	USB Drive	4	Operator Panel
5	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	6	Document Feeder Tray
7	Document Output Tray	8	Power Switch
9	Toner Access Cover	10	Front Cover
11	Paper Width Guides	12	Length Guide
13	Slide Bar	14	Multipurpose feeder (MPF)
15	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)	16	Paper Cover*

* The paper cover is used as a tray to feed paper into the PSI as well as a cover to protect the paper loaded on the MPF.

DocuPrint M205 b

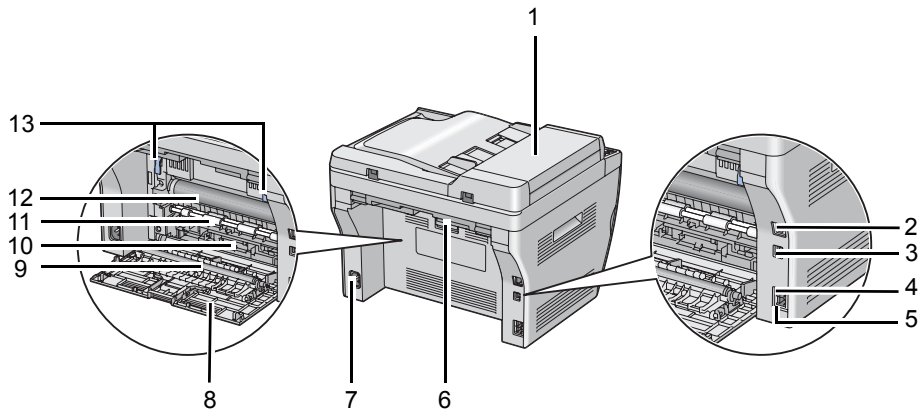


1	Output Tray Extension	2	Center Output Tray
3	USB Drive	4	Operator Panel
5	Document Cover	6	Document Glass
7	Power Switch	8	Toner Access Cover
9	Front Cover	10	Paper Width Guides
11	Length Guide	12	Slide Bar
13	Multipurpose feeder (MPF)	14	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)
15	Paper Cover*		

* The paper cover is used as a tray to feed paper into the PSI as well as a cover to protect the paper loaded on the MPF.

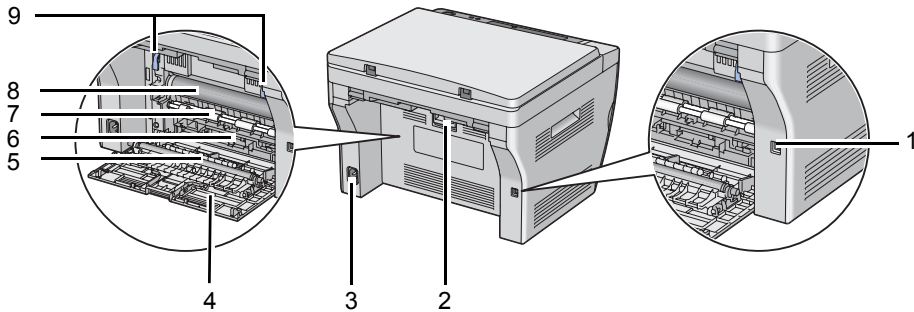
■ Rear View

DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw



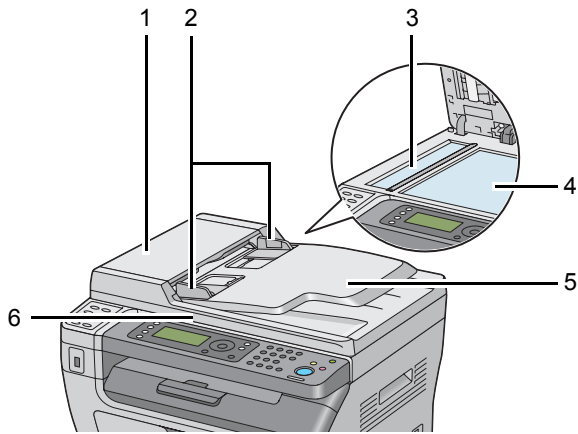
1	ADF Cover	2	Ethernet Port
3	USB Port	4	Wall Jack Connector
5	Phone Connector	6	Rear Cover Handle
7	Power Connector	8	Rear Cover
9	Transfer Roller	10	Paper Chute
11	Paper Feed Roller	12	Transfer Drum
13	Levers		

DocuPrint M205 b



1	USB Port	2	Rear Cover Handle
3	Power Connector	4	Rear Cover
5	Transfer Roller	6	Paper Chute
7	Paper Feed Roller	8	Transfer Drum
9	Levers		

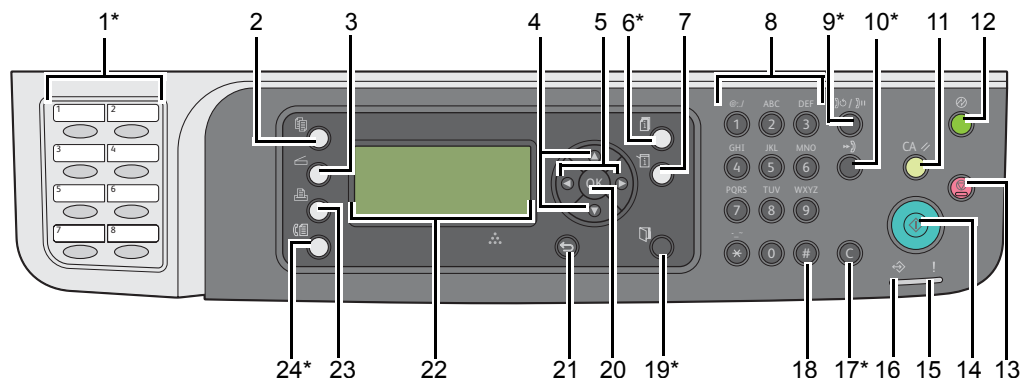
■ Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (DocuPrint M205 f/M 205 fw Only)



- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 | ADF Cover |
| 2 | Document Guides |
| 3 | ADF Glass |
| 4 | Document Glass |
| 5 | Document Feeder Tray |
| 6 | Document Cover |






■ Operator Panel

The operator panel has a 4-line by 28-character liquid crystal display (LCD), light-emitting diodes (LED), control buttons, one-touch buttons, and numeric keypad, which allow you to control the printer. (The one-touch buttons are available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)




*: This button/LED is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.

1*	One-touch buttons	Calls up the stored fax number registered in the Address Book. The first eight fax numbers in the Address Book are assigned to the buttons in row order, starting from the top corner.
2	(Copy) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Copy menu.
3	(Scan) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Scan menu.
4	buttons	Moves a cursor or highlight up or down.
5	buttons	Moves a cursor or highlight left or right.
6*	(Job Status) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Job Status menu.
7	(System) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the System menu.
8	Numeric keypad	DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enters characters and numbers. DocuPrint M205 b <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enters numbers.
9*	(Redial/Pause) button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Re-dials a telephone number. • Inserts a pause during dialing.
10*	(Speed Dial) button	Calls up a stored telephone number.
11	CA (Clear All) button	Resets the current setting, and returns to the top level of each service menu.
12	(Energy Saver) button/LED	Lights up in the Sleep mode. Press this button to exit the Sleep mode.
13	(Stop) button	Cancels the current processing or pending job.
14	(Start) button	Starts a job.
15	(Error) LED	Lights up when the printer has an error.
16	(Data) LED	Lights up for incoming, outgoing, or pending jobs.
17*	C (Clear) button	Deletes characters and numbers.

18	# button (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)	Enters characters "(space) & ()".
	C (Clear) button (DocuPrint M205 b only)	Deletes numbers.
19*	 (Address Book) button	Pressing this button at the Fax menu, moves to the top level of the Address Book menu.
20	 button	Confirms the entry of values.
21	 (Back) button	Returns to the previous screen.
22	LCD Panel	Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.
23	 (Print) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Print menu.
24*	 (Fax) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Fax menu.
*: This button/LED is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.		

NOTE:

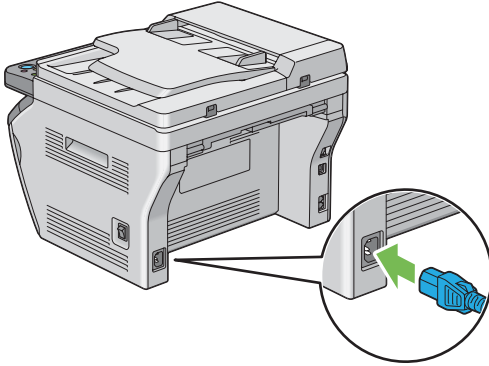
- Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to press the  button to save the current entry or setting.
- For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, see ["Using the Numeric Keypad" on page 358](#) for details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters.

Turning On the Printer

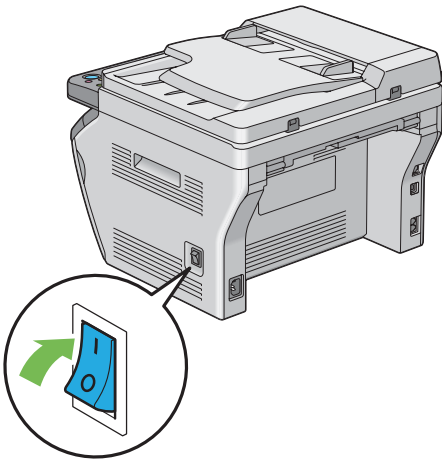
IMPORTANT:

- Do not use extension cords or power strips.
- The printer should not be connected to an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) system.

- 1 Connect the power cord to the power connector on the rear of your printer (see "[Rear View](#)" on [page 43](#)).



- 2 Connect the other end of the cord to the power source.
- 3 Turn on the printer.



NOTE:

- When you turn on the printer for the first time, follow the on-screen instructions on the LCD panel to configure the initial settings of your printer.

See also:

- "[Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel](#)" on [page 48](#)

Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel












You need to set the printer language, clock date, and time when you turn on the printer for the first time. (Clock date and time are available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)

When you turn on the printer, a wizard appears on the LCD panel. Follow the step below to set the initial settings.


NOTE:

- If you do not start configuring the initial settings, `Select Function` appears on the LCD panel in three minutes. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling `Power On Wizard` on the operator panel if needed.
For more information about the operator panel, see ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 314](#).

• For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw

- 1 Select the language you want to use on the operator panel, and then press the  button.
- 2 Press the  button to start setting the region.
- 3 Select your region, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the appropriate time zone, and then press the  button.
- 5 Specify the current date, and then press the  button.
- 6 Specify the current time, and then press the  button.
- 7 Press the  button for fax setup.
If you want to skip the fax setup, press the  (**Start**) button.
- 8 Enter your fax number, and then press the  button.
- 9 Enter a name, and then press the  button.
- 10 Press the  button to complete the initial settings on the operator panel.

• For the DocuPrint M205 b

- 1 Select the language you want to use on the operator panel, and then press the  button.

Printing a Panel Settings Page

The Panel Settings page shows current settings for the operator panel menus.




This section includes:

- ["The Operator Panel" on page 50](#)
- ["The Printer Setting Utility" on page 51](#)

■ The Operator Panel

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Panel Settings`, and then press the  button.
The Panel Settings page is printed.

■ The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® XP as an example.

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.



NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Reports** page is displayed.
- 4 Click the **Panel Settings** button.
The Panel Settings page is printed.

Power Saver Mode

The printer has a power saving feature which reduces power consumption during periods of inactivity. This feature operates in two modes: Low Power mode and Sleep mode. As delivered, the printer switches to the Low Power mode one minute after the last job is finished. The printer then switches to the Sleep mode after another 10 minutes of inactivity. The Sleep mode is also manually activated by pressing the  (**Energy Saver**) button when the display shows *Select Function*. When the printer is in the Low Power mode, the LCD backlight turns off. In the Sleep mode, the  (**Energy Saver**) button lights up. The LCD panel goes blank and displays nothing.

The factory default settings of 1 minute (Low Power mode) and 10 minutes (Sleep mode) are changeable within the range of 1 to 30 minutes (Low Power mode) and 6 to 11 minutes (Sleep mode). The printer returns to the ready-to-print state in about 25 seconds when re-activated.

See also:

- ["Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode" on page 356](#)

■ Exiting the Power Saver Mode

The printer automatically exits the Power Saver mode when it receives a job from a computer. To manually exit the Low Power mode, press any button on the operator panel. To exit the Sleep mode, press the ⓧ (**Energy Saver**) button.

NOTE:

- When the printer is in the Sleep mode, all buttons on the operator panel except for the ⓧ (**Energy Saver**) button do not function. To use the buttons on the operator panel, press the ⓧ (**Energy Saver**) button to exit the Power Saver mode.

See also:

- ["Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode" on page 356](#)

Printer Management Software

Use the *Software Pack CD-ROM* that is shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

This chapter includes:

- ["Print and Scan Drivers" on page 56](#)
- ["CentreWare Internet Services \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 57](#)
- ["Printer Setting Utility \(Windows Only\)" on page 59](#)
- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 60](#)
- ["Launcher \(Windows Only\)" on page 61](#)
- ["Address Book Editor \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 63](#)
- ["Express Scan Manager" on page 64](#)
- ["DocuWorks \(Windows Only\) \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 65](#)

Print and Scan Drivers

To access all of your printer's features, install the print and scan drivers from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

- The print driver enables your computer and printer to communicate and provides access to your printer features.
- The scan driver enables you to scan images directly to your personal computer and place scanned images directly into an application via USB or the network. (The network feature is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205fw.)

The scan driver is installed with your print driver. It is available for Microsoft® Windows® and Mac OS® X.

See also:

- ["Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows" on page 82](#)
- ["Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X" on page 127](#)

CentreWare Internet Services (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

This section provides information on CentreWare Internet Services.

CentreWare Internet Services is a hyper text transfer protocol (HTTP)-based web page service that is accessed through your web browser.

Using the CentreWare Internet Services you can confirm the printer status, and change the printer configuration options easily. Anyone on your network can access the printer using the CentreWare Internet Services. In administrative mode you can change the configuration of the printer, set up your fax directories, and manage your printer settings without leaving your computer.

NOTE:

- Users who are not given passwords by the administrator can still view the configuration settings in user mode. They will not be able to save or apply any changes to the current configuration and settings.
- For details on the menu items of CentreWare Internet Services, refer to the Help on CentreWare Internet Services.

■ Creating an Administrative Password

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **Administrator Settings**.
- 5 Select **Enabled** for **Administrator Mode**.
- 6 In the **Administrator Login ID** field, enter a name for the administrator.

NOTE:

- The default ID and password are “11111” and “x-admin” respectively.
- 7 In the **Administrator Password** and **Re-enter Password** fields, enter a password for the administrator.
 - 8 In the **Maximum Login Attempts** field, enter the number of login attempts allowed.
 - 9 Click **Apply**.
- Your new password has been set and anyone with the administrator name and password can log in and change the printer configuration and settings.

Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The Printer Setting Utility allows you to view or specify the system settings. You can also diagnose the system settings by using the Printer Setting Utility.

The Printer Setting Utility consists of the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Maintenance**, and **Diagnosis** tabs.

The Printer Setting Utility is installed with your print driver.

NOTE:

- The **Password** dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on Printer Setting Utility when **Panel Lock** is set on the printer. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK** to apply the settings.

SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

You can check the printer status with SimpleMonitor. Double-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. The **Printer Selection** window appears, which displays the printer name, printer connection port, printer status, and model name. Check the column **Status** to know the current status of your printer.

Settings button: Displays the **Settings** window and allows you to modify the SimpleMonitor settings.

Click the name of the desired printer listed on the **Printer Selection** window. The **Printer Status** window appears.

The **Printer Status** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Printer Status** window launches automatically when an error occurs. You can specify the conditions for starting the **Printer Status** window in **Printer Status Window Properties**.

To change the pop-up settings for the **Printer Status** window:

- 1 Right-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen.
- 2 Select **Printer Status Window Properties**.
The **Printer Status Window Properties** window appears.
- 3 Select the type of the pop-up and then click **OK**.

You can also check the toner level of your printer and the job information on the **Printer Status** window.

The SimpleMonitor is installed with your print driver.

Launcher (Windows Only)

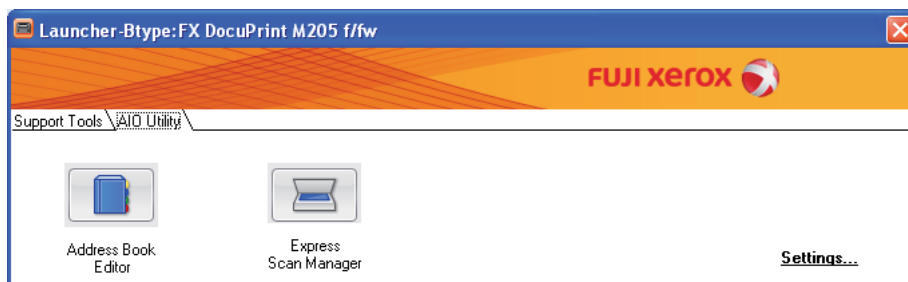
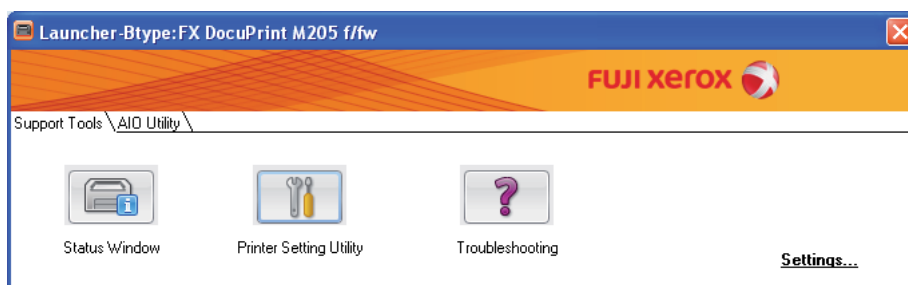
Using the **Launcher-Btype** window, you can open the **Status Window**, **Printer Setting Utility**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, and **Express Scan Manager**. (The **Address Book Editor** is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw)

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

To open the **Launcher-Btype** window:

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Launcher**.

The **Launcher-Btype** window appears.



The **Address Book Editor** is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.

- 2 The **Launcher-Btype** window provides several buttons; **Status Window**, **Printer Setting Utility**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, and **Express Scan Manager**. (The **Address Book Editor** is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)

To exit, click the **X** button at the top-right of the window.

For details, click the **Help** button/icon of each application.

Status Window	Opens the Printer Status window. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 60
Printer Setting Utility	Opens the Printer Setting Utility. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)" on page 59
Troubleshooting	Opens the Troubleshooting guide, which allows you to resolve issues by yourself.

Address Book Editor (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only) Opens the Address Book Editor, which allows you to add and edit Address Book entries.

See also:

- ["Address Book Editor \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 63](#)

Express Scan Manager Opens the Express Scan Manager.

See also:

- ["Express Scan Manager" on page 64](#)
-

The Launcher is installed with your print driver.

Address Book Editor (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

The Address Book Editor provides a convenient interface for modifying the printer's Address Book entries. With it you can add:

- Fax entries
- E-Mail entries
- Server entries

When you start the software, the Address Book Editor reads the printer's Address Book. You can add, edit, and delete entries. After making changes, you can then save the updated Address Book to the printer or to your computer.

The Address Book Editor is installed with your print driver. It is available for Windows and Mac OS X.

Express Scan Manager

The Express Scan Manager handles scan jobs sent from the printer to your computer via USB. When scan jobs are sent from the printer to the computer, Express Scan Manager automatically manages the scan jobs.

Before scanning to your computer, start Express Scan Manager and configure the output destination of the scanned image files.

Click **Open the image file** to display scanned files saved in the specified destination after scanning. The Express Scan Manager is installed with your print driver. It is available for Windows and Mac OS X.

NOTE:

- When you separately install the Express Scan Manager from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*, you also need to install the scan driver from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

See also:

- ["Scanning From the Operator Panel" on page 214](#)

DocuWorks (Windows Only) (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

When installing DocuWorks, run the appropriate EXE file in the *DocuWorks document handling software*.

Windows supports DocuWorks and DocuWorks Viewer Light.

DocuWorks is available only for Windows.

NOTE:

- For more information on DocuWorks, refer to the readme file on the *DocuWorks document handling software*.

Printer Connection and Software Installation

This chapter includes:

- ["Overview of Network Setup and Configuration \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 68](#)
- ["Connecting Your Printer" on page 69](#)
- ["Setting the IP Address \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 73](#)
- ["Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows" on page 82](#)
- ["Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X" on page 127](#)

Overview of Network Setup and Configuration (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

To set up and configure the network:

- 1 Connect the printer to the network using the recommended hardware and cables.
- 2 Turn on the printer and the computer.
- 3 Print the System Settings page and keep it for referencing network settings.
- 4 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*. For information on driver installation, see the section in this chapter for the specific operating system you are using.
- 5 Configure the printer's TCP/IP address, which is required to identify the printer on the network.
 - Microsoft® Windows® operating systems: Run the Installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM* to automatically set the printer's Internet Protocol (IP) address if you connect the printer to an established TCP/IP network. You can also manually set the printer's IP address on the operator panel.
 - Mac OS® X systems: Manually set the printer's TCP/IP address on the operator panel. To use a wireless connection, also configure wireless settings on the operator panel. (A wireless connection is available only on the DocuPrint M205 fw.)
- 6 Print a System Settings page to verify the new settings.

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.
- If the *Software Pack CD-ROM* is not available, you can download the latest driver from our web site:
<http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>

See also:

- "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 182

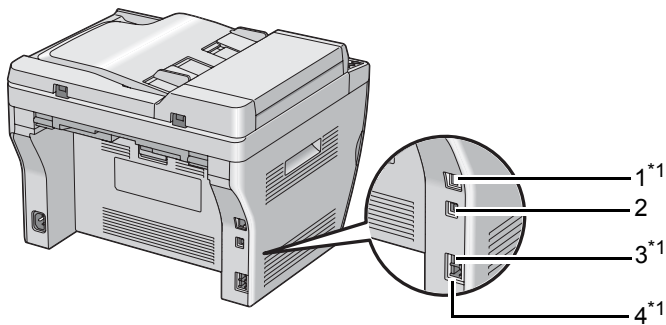
Connecting Your Printer





Your printer interconnection cables must meet the following requirements:

Connection Type	Connection Specifications
Ethernet ^{*1}	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX compatible
USB	USB 2.0 compatible
Wireless ^{*2}	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g
Wall jack connector ^{*1}	RJ11
Phone connector ^{*1}	RJ11

*1: Available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.

*2: Available only on the DocuPrint M205 fw.



1 Ethernet Port ^{*1}	
2 USB Port	
3 Wall Jack Connector ^{*1}	LINE 
4 Phone Connector ^{*1}	PHONE 

*1: Available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.

■ Connecting Printer to Computer or Network

Connect the printer via Ethernet or USB. (A network connection is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.) Hardware and cabling requirements vary for the different connection methods.

Ethernet cable and hardware are not included with your printer and must be purchased separately.

The available features for each connection type are shown in the following table.

• DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw

Connection Type	Available Features
USB	When connected via USB you can: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Instruct print jobs from a computer.• Scan and print an image into an application.• Scan and print an image to a folder on the computer.• Use the Address Book Editor to manage Address Book entries.
Ethernet	When connected via Ethernet you can: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Instruct print jobs from a computer on the network.• Scan and print an image to a computer on the network.• Scan and print an image to an FTP server.• Scan to email.• Use CentreWare Internet Services to manage Address Book entries.

• DocuPrint M205 b

Connection Type	Available Features
USB	You can: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Instruct print jobs from a computer.• Scan and print an image into an application.• Scan and print an image to a folder on the computer.

USB Connection

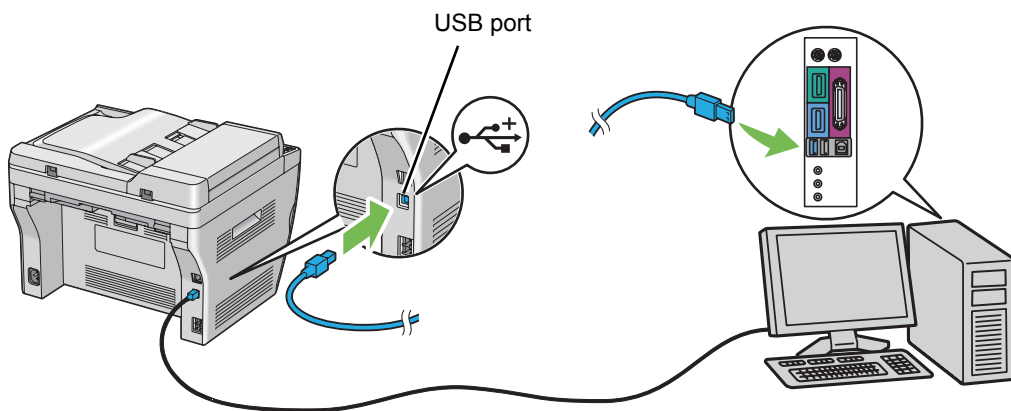
If your printer is attached to a network instead of your computer, skip this section and go to "[Network Connection \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)](#)" on page 72.

The following operating systems support USB connection:

- Windows XP
- Windows XP 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server® 2003
- Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Vista®
- Windows Vista 64-bit Edition
- Windows 7
- Windows 7 64-bit Edition
- Mac OS X 10.4.11/10.5.8 - 10.6

To attach the printer to a computer:

- 1 Ensure that the printer, computer, and any other attached devices are turned off and unplugged from the power source/outlet.
- 2 Connect one end of a USB cable into the USB port at the rear of the printer, and the other end to a USB port of the computer.



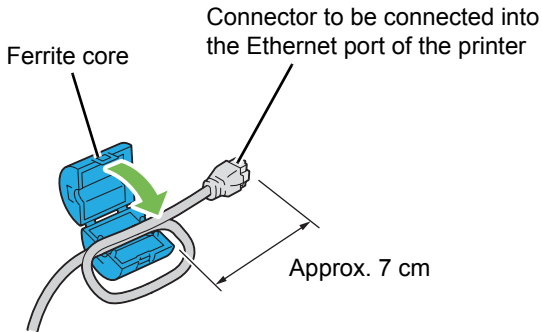
NOTE:

- Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB connector available on the keyboard.

Network Connection (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

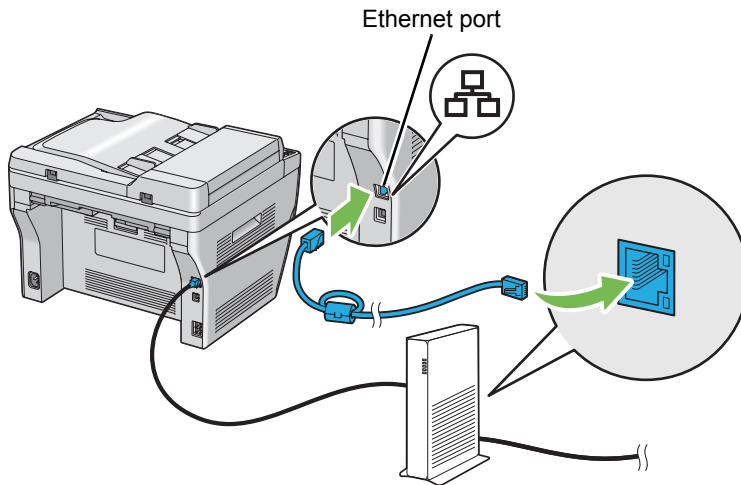
To connect the printer to a network:

- 1 Ensure that the printer, computer and any other connected devices have been turned off and all cables have been disconnected.
- 2 Twist the Ethernet cable around the ferrite core shipped with the printer as shown in the figure, and then close the ferrite core.



IMPORTANT:

- Do not twist the Ethernet cable too tightly. The Ethernet cable may be cut off.
- 3 Connect the Ethernet cable to the Ethernet port at the rear of the printer, and to a LAN drop or hub.



NOTE:

- Connect the Ethernet cable, only if you need to setup a wired connection.

See also:

- ["Configuring Wireless Settings \(DocuPrint M205 fw Only\)" on page 88](#)

Setting the IP Address (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

This section includes:

- ["TCP/IP and IP Addresses" on page 74](#)
- ["Automatically Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 75](#)
- ["Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 76](#)
- ["Assigning an IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\)" on page 77](#)
- ["Verifying the IP Settings" on page 80](#)
- ["Printing and Checking the System Settings Page" on page 81](#)

■ TCP/IP and IP Addresses

If your computer is on a large network, contact your network administrator for the appropriate TCP/IP addresses and additional system settings information.

If you are creating your own small Local Area Network or connecting the printer directly to your computer using Ethernet, follow the procedure for automatically setting the printer's IP address.

Computers and printers primarily use TCP/IP protocols to communicate over an Ethernet network. With TCP/IP protocols, each printer and computer must have a unique IP address. It is important that the addresses are similar, but not the same; only the last digit needs to be different. For example, your printer can have the address 192.168.1.2 while your computer has the address 192.168.1.3. Another device can have the address 192.168.1.4.

Many networks have a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. A DHCP server automatically programs an IP address into every computer and printer on the network that is configured to use DHCP. A DHCP server is built into most cable and Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) routers. If you use a cable or DSL router, see your router's documentation for information on IP addressing.

■ Automatically Setting the Printer's IP Address

If the printer is connected to a small established TCP/IP network without a DHCP server, use the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM* to detect or assign an IP address to your printer. For further instructions, insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer's CD/DVD drive. After the Installer launches, follow the prompts for installation.

NOTE:

- For the automatic installer to function, the printer must be connected to an established TCP/IP network.

■ Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address

There are two protocols available for dynamically setting the printer's IP address:

- DHCP (enabled by default)
- Auto IP

You can turn on/off both protocols using the operator panel, or use CentreWare Internet Services to turn on/off DHCP.

NOTE:

- You can print a report that includes the printer's IP address. On the operator panel, press the **i** (**System**) button, select `Report / List`, press the **OK** button, select `System Settings`, and then press the **OK** button. The IP address is listed on the System Settings page.

Using the Operator Panel

To turn on/off either the DHCP or AutoIP protocol:

- 1 On the operator panel, press the **i** (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select `Network`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select `TCP/IP`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select `IPv4`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 6 Select `Get IP Address`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 7 Select `DHCP` or `Auto IP`, and then press the **OK** button.

Using CentreWare Internet Services

To turn on/off the DHCP protocol:

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
- 3 Select **Properties**.
- 4 Select **TCP/IP** from the **Protocol Settings** folder on the left navigation panel.
- 5 In the **IP Address Mode** field, select the **DHCP/Autonet** option.
- 6 Click the **Apply** button.



















■ Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)

NOTE:

- When you assign an IP address manually in **IPv6** mode, use the CentreWare Internet Services. To display the CentreWare Internet Services, use the link local address. To check a link local address, see "[Printing and Checking the System Settings Page](#)" on page 81.
- Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.
- Depending on the address class, the range of the IP address assigned may be different. On Class A, for example, an IP address in the range from 0.0.0.0 to 127.255.255.255 will be assigned. For assignment of IP addresses, contact your system administrator.

You can assign the IP address by using the operator panel or using the Printer Setting Utility.

The Operator Panel

- 1** Turn on the printer.
Ensure that `Select Function` message appears on the LCD panel.
- 2** On the operator panel, press the  (**System**) button.
- 3** Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 4** Select `Network`, and then press the  button.
- 5** Select `TCP/IP`, and then press the  button.
- 6** Select `IPv4`, and then press the  button.
- 7** Select `Get IP Address`, and then press the  button.
- 8** Ensure that `Panel` is selected, and then press the  (**Back**) button.
- 9** Ensure that `Get IP Address` is selected.
- 10** Select `IP Address`, and then press the  button.
The cursor is located at the first three digits of the IP address.
- 11** Enter the value of the IP address using the numeric keypad.
- 12** Press the  button.
The next three digits are highlighted.
- 13** Repeat steps **11** to **12** to enter all of the digits in the IP address, and then press the  button.
- 14** Press the  (**Back**) button, and then ensure that `IP Address` is selected.
- 15** Select `Subnet Mask`, and then press the  button.
The cursor is located at the first three digits of the subnet mask.
- 16** Enter the value of the subnet mask using the numeric keypad.
- 17** Press the  button.
The next three digits are highlighted.
- 18** Repeat steps **16** to **17** to set subnet mask, and then press the  button.
- 19** Press the  (**Back**) button, and then ensure that `Subnet Mask` is selected.
- 20** Select `Gateway Address`, and then press the  button.
The cursor is located at the first three digits of the gateway address.
- 21** Enter the value of the gateway address using the numeric keypad.
- 22** Press the  button.
The next three digits are highlighted.
- 23** Repeat steps **21** to **22** to set gateway address, and then press the  button.

24 Turn off and turn on the printer.

See also:

- "Operator Panel" on page 45

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

NOTE:

- When you use IPv6 mode for network printing, you cannot use the Printer Setting Utility to assign an IP address.

1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **TCP/IP Settings** page is displayed.

4 Select **Panel** from **IP Address Mode**, and then enter the values in **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, and **Gateway Address**.

5 Click the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to take effect.

The IP address is assigned to your printer. To verify the setting, display the web browser on any computer connected to the network and enter the IP address into the address bar on the browser. If the IP address is set up correctly, the CentreWare Internet Services displays in your browser.

You can also assign the IP address to the printer when installing the print drivers with installer. When you use the network installation feature, and the `Get IP Address` is set to `DHCP` or `Auto IP` on the operator panel menu, you can set the IP address from `0.0.0.0` to the desired IP address on the printer selection window.

■ Verifying the IP Settings

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Print the System Settings page.
- 2 Look under the **IPv4** heading on the System Settings page to ensure that the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address are appropriate.

To verify if the printer is active on the network, run the ping command in your computer:

- 1 Click **start**, and select **Run**.
- 2 Enter **cmd**, and then click **OK**.
A black window is displayed.
- 3 Enter **ping xx.xx.xx.xx** (where **xx.xx.xx.xx** is the IP address of your printer), and then press the **Enter** key.
- 4 Reply from the IP address denotes printer is active on the network.

See also:

- ["Printing and Checking the System Settings Page" on page 81](#)

■ Printing and Checking the System Settings Page

Print the System Settings page and check your printer's IP address.




This section includes:

- ["The Operator Panel" on page 81](#)
- ["The Printer Setting Utility" on page 81](#)

The Operator Panel

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
The System Settings page is printed.
- 4 Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Wired Network/Wireless Network** on the System Settings page. If the IP address is **0.0.0.0**, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the System Settings page again.
If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see ["Assigning an IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\)" on page 77](#).

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.
- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Reports** page is displayed.
- 4 Click the **System Settings** button.
The System Settings page is printed.
If the IP address is **0.0.0.0** (the factory default) or **169.254.xx.xx**, an IP address has not been assigned.

See also:

- ["Assigning an IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\)" on page 77](#)

Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows

This section includes:

- ["Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status \(for Network Connection Setup\) \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 83](#)
- ["Inserting the Software Pack CD-ROM" on page 85](#)
- ["USB Connection Setup" on page 86](#)
- ["Network Connection Setup \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 87](#)
- ["Configuring Wireless Settings \(DocuPrint M205 fw Only\)" on page 88](#)
- ["Setting Up for Shared Printing \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 119](#)

■ Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status (for Network Connection Setup) (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Before installing the print driver on your computer, print the System Settings page to check the IP address of your printer.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.




This section includes:

- ["The Operator Panel" on page 83](#)
- ["The Printer Setting Utility" on page 83](#)
- ["Disabling the Firewall Before Installing Your Printer" on page 84](#)

The Operator Panel

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
The System Settings page is printed.
- 4 Find the IP address under **Wired Network/Wireless Network** on the System Settings page.
If the IP address is `0.0.0.0`, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the System Settings page again.

If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see ["Assigning an IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\)" on page 77](#).

The Printer Setting Utility

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list on the left side of the page.
The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.

If the IP address shows **0.0.0.0** (the factory default) or **169.254.xx.xx**, an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see ["Assigning an IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\)" on page 77](#).

Disabling the Firewall Before Installing Your Printer

NOTE:

- For Windows XP, Service Pack 2 or 3 must be installed.

If you are running one of the following operating systems, you must disable the firewall before installing the printer software:

- Windows 7
- Windows Vista
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows XP

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

- 1 Click **start** → **Help and Support**.

NOTE:

- For Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7 operating systems, if you use **Online Help**, switch to **Offline Help** on **Windows Help and Support** window.

- 2 In the **Search** box, enter **firewall** and then press the **Enter** key.

In the list, click **Turn Windows Firewall on or off** and then follow the instructions on the screen.

Enable the firewall after the installation of the printer software is complete.

■ Inserting the Software Pack CD-ROM

- 1 Insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer's CD/DVD drive to start **Easy Install Navi**.

NOTE:

- If the CD does not automatically launch, click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) → **All Programs** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) → **Accessories** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) → **Run**, and then enter **D:\setup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of your computer's CD/DVD drive), and then click **OK**.

■ USB Connection Setup

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1 Connect the computer and the printer with the USB cable.

2 Turn on the printer.

NOTE:

- If **Found New Hardware Wizard** appears, click **Cancel**.

3 Click **Installing Drivers and Software**.

4 Select **Personal Installation**, and then click **Next**.

5 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, click **I accept the terms of the license agreement** to continue the installation process, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

• USB Printing

A personal printer is a printer attached to your computer or a print server using a USB cable. If your printer is attached to a network and not your computer, see "[Network Connection Setup \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)](#)" on page 87.

■ Network Connection Setup (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

- 1 Click **Installing Drivers and Software**.
- 2 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 3 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, click **I accept the terms of the license agreement** to continue the installation process, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Select the printer you want to install from the printer list, and then click **Next**. If the target printer is not displayed on the list, click **Refresh** to refresh the list or click **Add Printer** to add a printer to the list manually. You may specify the IP address and port name at this point.
If you have installed this printer on the server computer, select **I am setting up this printer on a server** check box.
NOTE:
 - When using AutoIP, **0.0.0.0** is displayed in the installer. Before you can continue, you must enter a valid IP address.
- 5 Specify the printer settings, and then click **Next**.
 - a Enter the printer name.
 - b If you want other users on the network to access this printer, select **Share this printer with other computers on the network**, and then enter a share name that users can identify.
 - c If you want to set a printer as the default for printing, select the **Set this printer as default for printing** check box.
 - d If you want to set a printer as the default for scanning, select the **Set this printer as default for scanning** check box.
 - e If you want to install the fax driver, select the **FAX Driver** check box.
- 6 Select the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Install**. You can specify folders in which to install the software and documentation. To change the folders, click **Browse**.
- 7 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

■ Configuring Wireless Settings (DocuPrint M205 fw Only)

You can configure wireless settings through **Easy Install Navi**.

IMPORTANT:

- The Wireless LAN feature is unavailable depending on the region you purchased.
- Be sure to get the SSID and security information from a system administrator in advance when you use other than WPS to configure wireless settings.
- Ensure that the Ethernet cable has been disconnected from the printer before you configure the wireless settings.

The specifications of wireless setting function are described below:

Item	Specification
Connectivity	Wireless
Connectivity Standard	IEEE 802.11b/g compliant
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11b mode: 11, 5.5, 2, 1 Mbps IEEE 802.11g mode: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/ 128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES)(IEEE802.1x attestation function of WPA 1x non-corresponds)
Certifications	Wi-Fi, WPA2.0 (Personal)
Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)	Push Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

You can select a method to configure a wireless setting from the following:

Wizard Setup Through USB Connection	
Advanced Setup Through	Ethernet connection
	Operator Panel
	CentreWare Internet Services
	WPS-PIN ^{*1}
	WPS-PBC ^{*2}

*1 WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi® Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN code in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

*2 WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

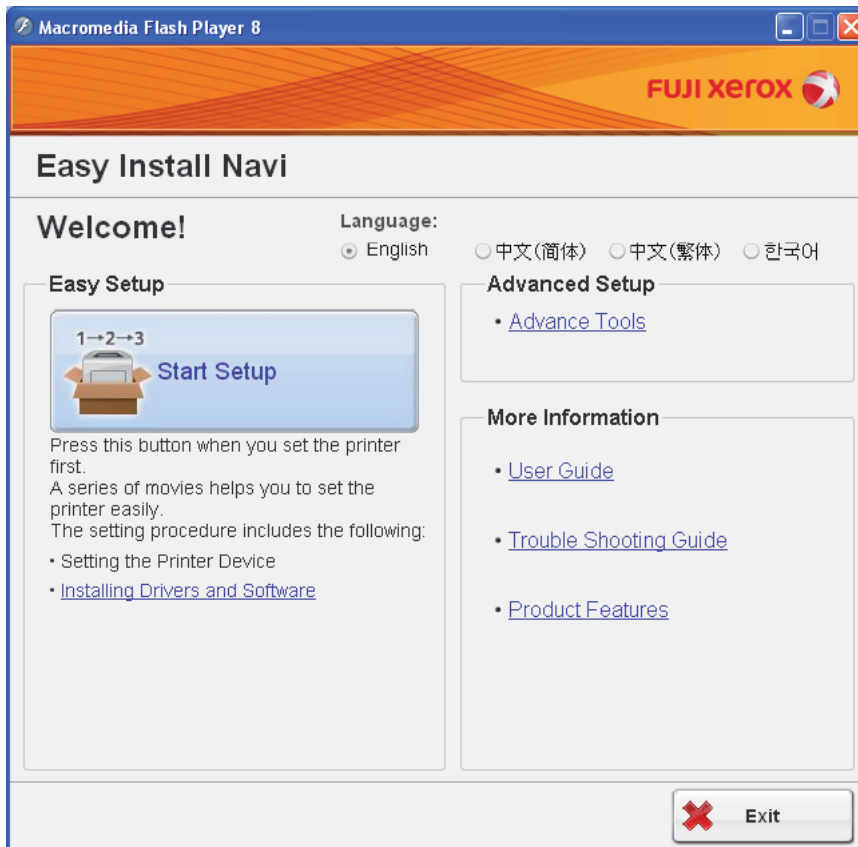
This section includes:

- ["Using Wizard Setup to Configure Wireless Settings" on page 89](#)
- ["Using Advanced Setup to Configure Wireless Settings" on page 95](#)
- ["Setting up a New Wireless Network Environment for Your Computer \(When You Need to Setup Your Wireless Connectivity With Your Computer\)" on page 110](#)

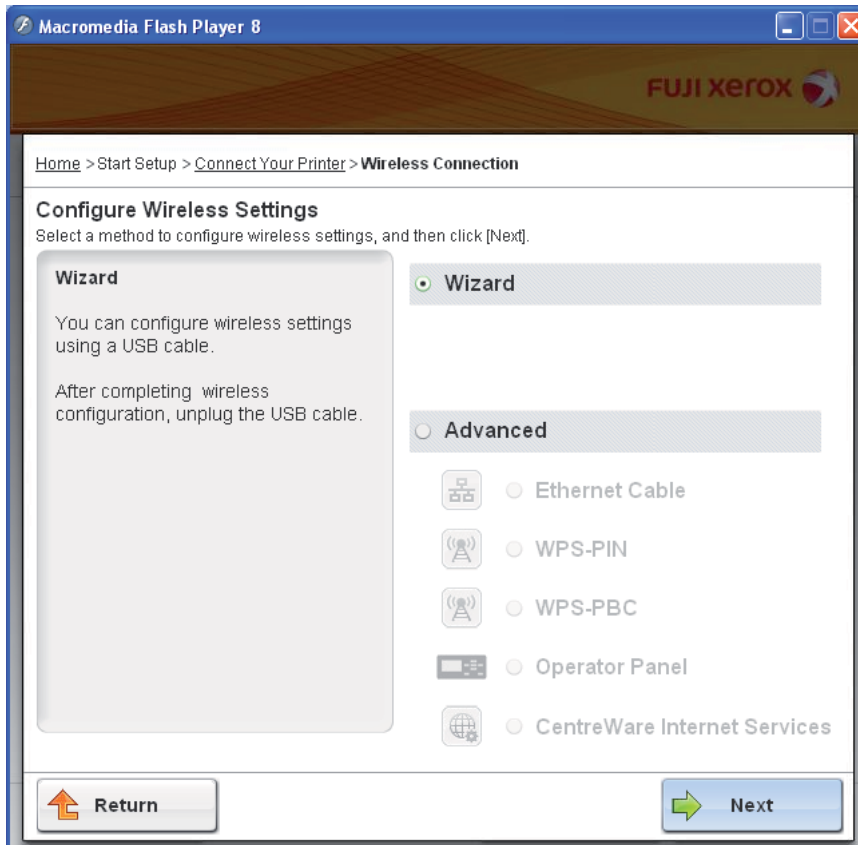
Using Wizard Setup to Configure Wireless Settings

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

- 1 Insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer's CD/DVD drive. The **Easy Install Navi** launches automatically.



- 2 Click **Start Setup**.
- 3 Click **Connect Your Printer**.
The connection type selection screen appears.
- 4 Select **Wireless Connection**, and then click **Next**.
The setting method selection screen appears.
- 5 Ensure that **Wizard** is selected, and then click **Next**.

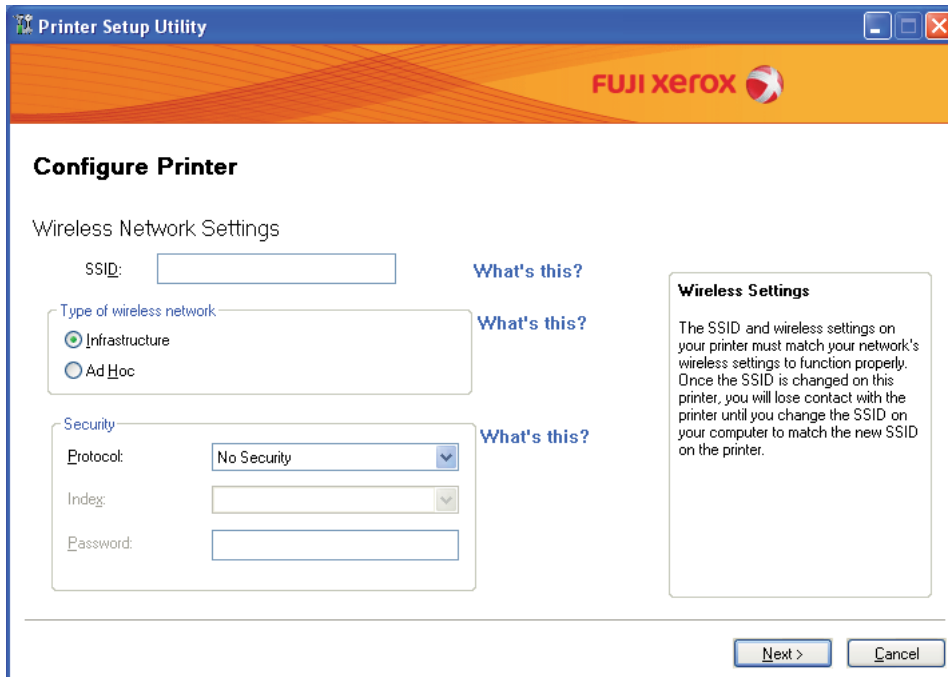


- 6 Follow the on-screen instructions to connect the USB cable and perform other setup until the **Printer Setup Utility** screen appears.

NOTE:

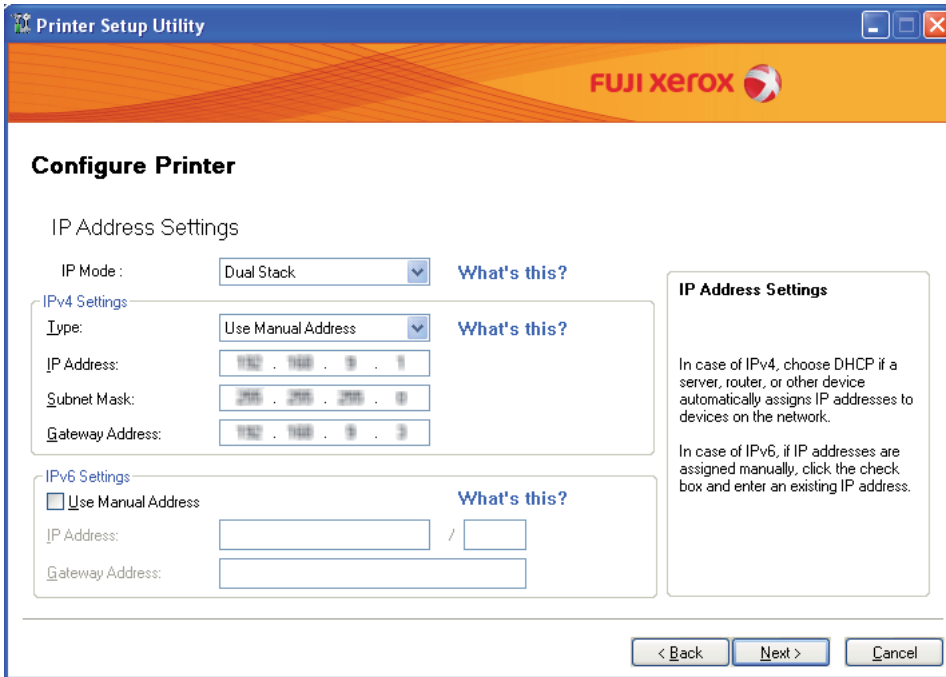
- If **Found New Hardware Wizard** appears, click **Cancel**.

- 7 Enter the SSID.



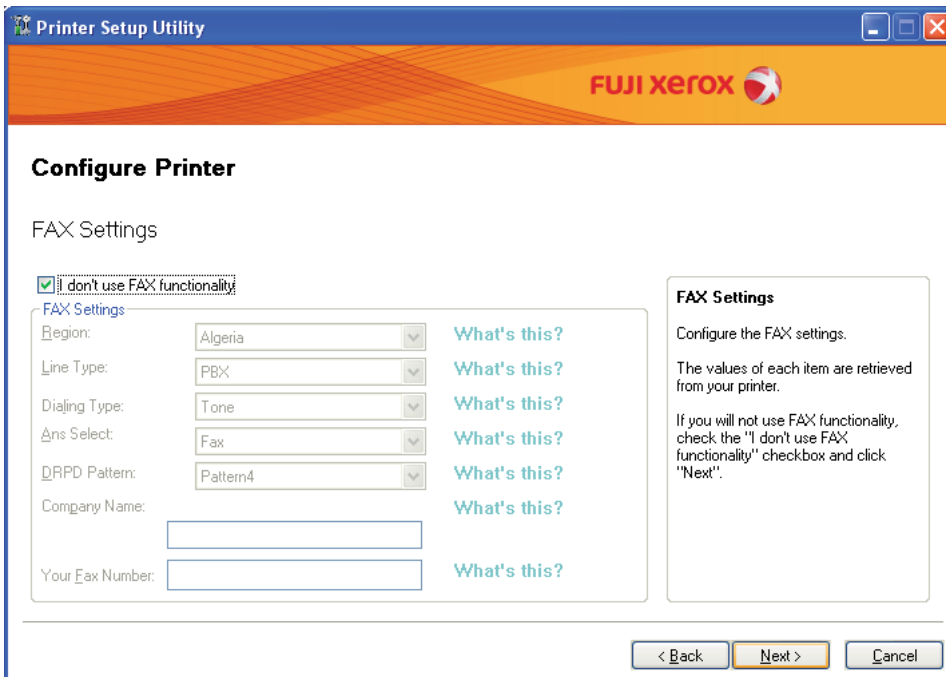
- 8 Select **Type of wireless network**.
- 9 Configure the security setting, and then click **Next**.
The "IP Address Settings" screen appears.
- 10 Select **IP Mode** depending on your network scheme.
When **IPv4** is selected, configure the following:
 - a Select **Type**.
 - b If you have selected **Use Manual Address** from **Type**, enter the following items:
 - **IP Address** of your printer
 - **Subnet Mask**
 - **Gateway Address**
 When **Dual Stack** is selected, configure the following:
 - a Configure **IPv4 Settings**.
 - b If you have selected the **Use Manual Address** check box under **IPv6 Settings**, enter the following items:
 - **IP Address** of your printer

- **Gateway Address**



11 Click **Next**.

The "FAX Settings" screen appears.



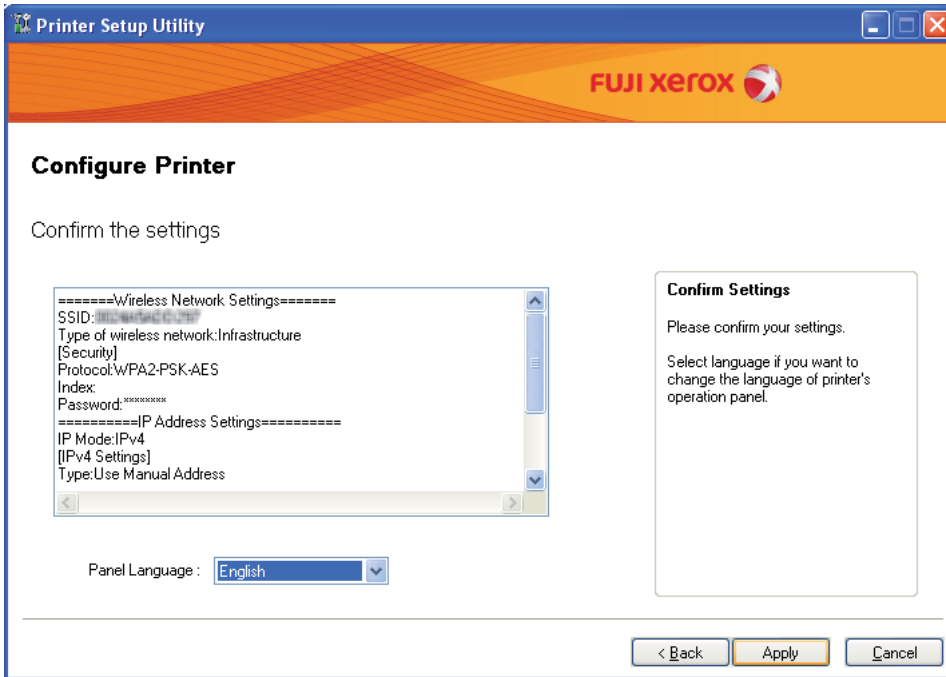
12 Configure the fax settings if necessary.

NOTE:

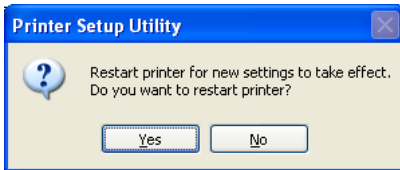
- If you will not use the fax feature, select the **I don't use FAX functionality** check box.

13 Click **Next**.

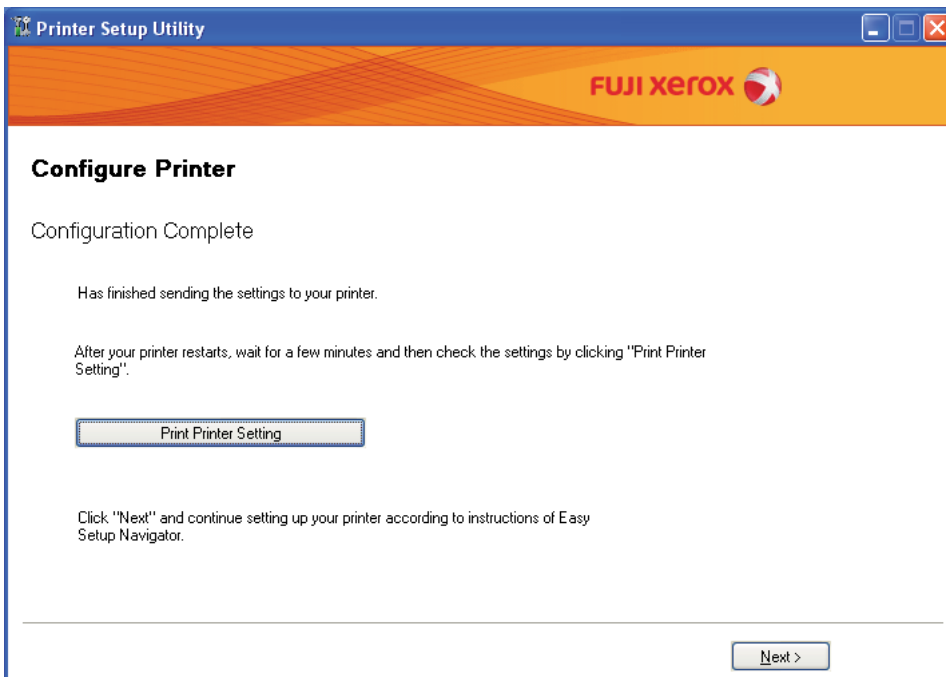
- 14 Ensure that the wireless settings are displayed, and then click **Apply**.



- 15 Click **Yes** to restart your printer.



The "Configuration Complete" screen appears.



16 Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.

NOTE:

- If **Found New Hardware Wizard** appears, click **Cancel**.

17 Click **Print Printer Setting**.

18 Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

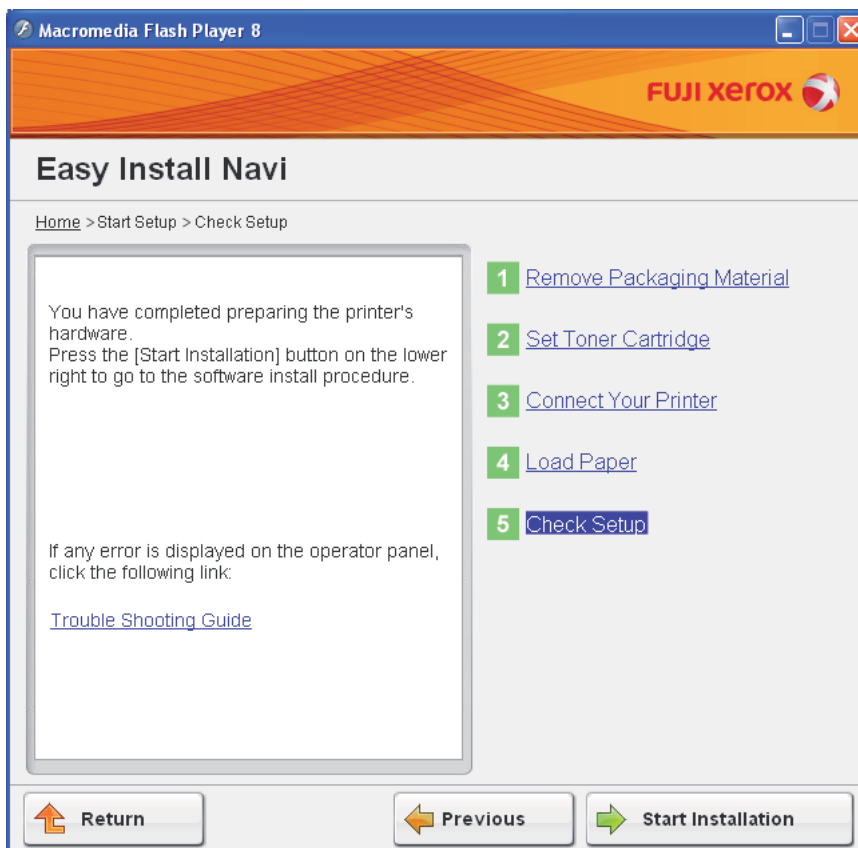
NOTE:

- When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured. To reconfigure the wireless settings, click **Next** on the "Configuration Complete" screen and then click **Return**.

19 Click **Next**.

20 Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.

21 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**. If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.



22 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, click **I accept the terms of the license agreement** to continue the installation process, and then click **Next**.

23 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

NOTE:

- If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:

- Click **Refresh** to update the information.
- Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

24 Select the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.

25 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

26 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

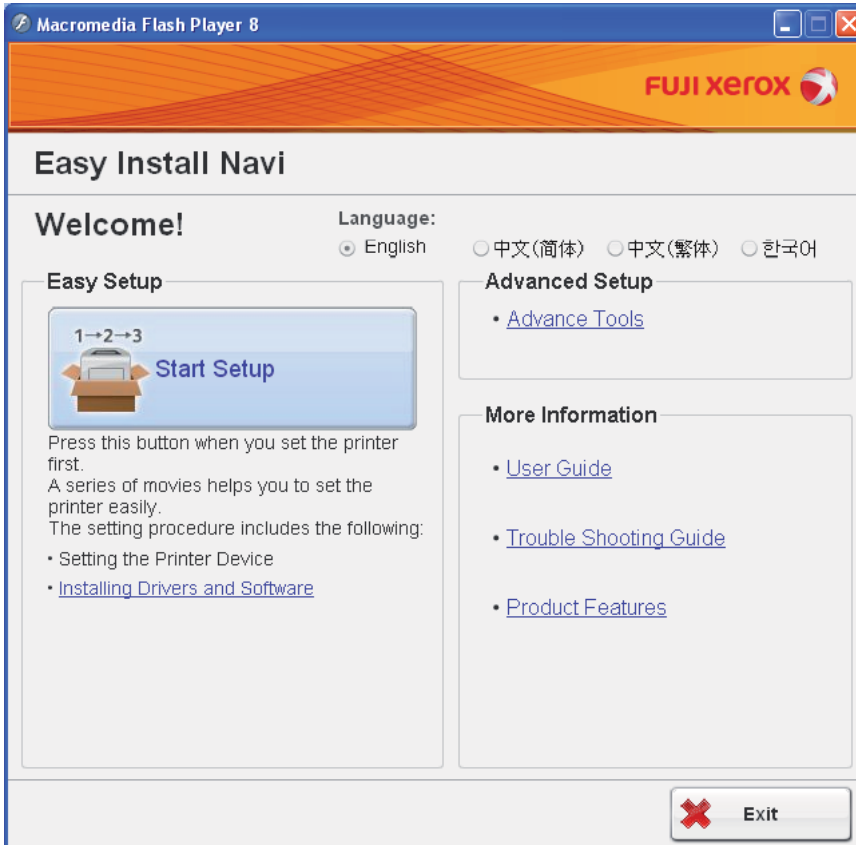
Using Advanced Setup to Configure Wireless Settings

To use the Advanced setup, display the Configure Wireless Settings screen.

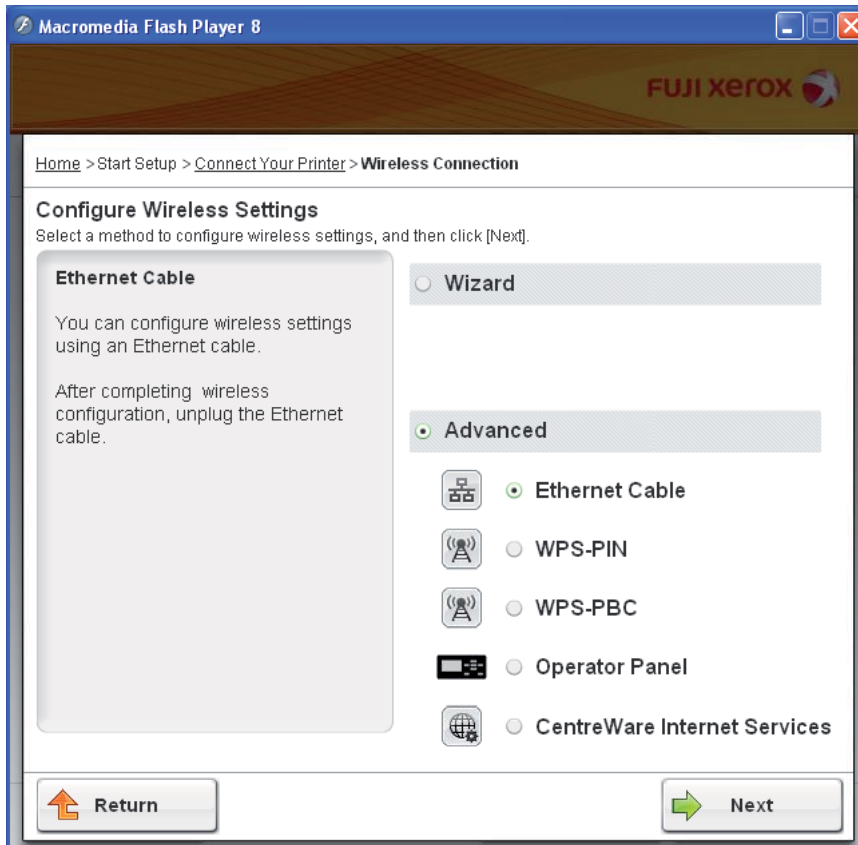
The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

• Displaying Configure Wireless Settings Screen

- 1 Insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer's CD/DVD drive. The **Easy Install Navi** launches automatically.



- 2 Click **Start Setup**.
- 3 Click **Connect Your Printer**.
- 4 Select **Wireless Connection**, and then click **Next**.
The setting method selection screen appears.
- 5 Select **Advanced**.



- **Select a connection method from the following**

- ["Ethernet Cable" on page 98](#)
- ["WPS-PIN" on page 104](#)
- ["WPS-PBC" on page 106](#)
- ["Operator Panel" on page 108](#)
- ["CentreWare Internet Services" on page 109](#)

• Ethernet Cable

- 1 Select **Ethernet Cable**, and then click **Next**.
- 2 Follow the on-screen instructions, and then click **Next**.
The **Printer Setup Utility** screen appears.
- 3 Select the printer to be configured in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

NOTE:

- If the printer to be configured is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:
 - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
 - Click **Enter IP Address**, and then enter the IP address of your printer.

- 4 Enter the SSID.

Printer Setup Utility

FUJI XEROX

Configure Printer

Wireless Network Settings

SSID: [What's this?](#)

Type of wireless network

Infrastructure [What's this?](#)

Ad Hoc

Security

Protocol: [What's this?](#)

Index:

Password:

Wireless Settings

The SSID and wireless settings on your printer must match your network's wireless settings to function properly. Once the SSID is changed on this printer, you will lose contact with the printer until you change the SSID on your computer to match the new SSID on the printer.

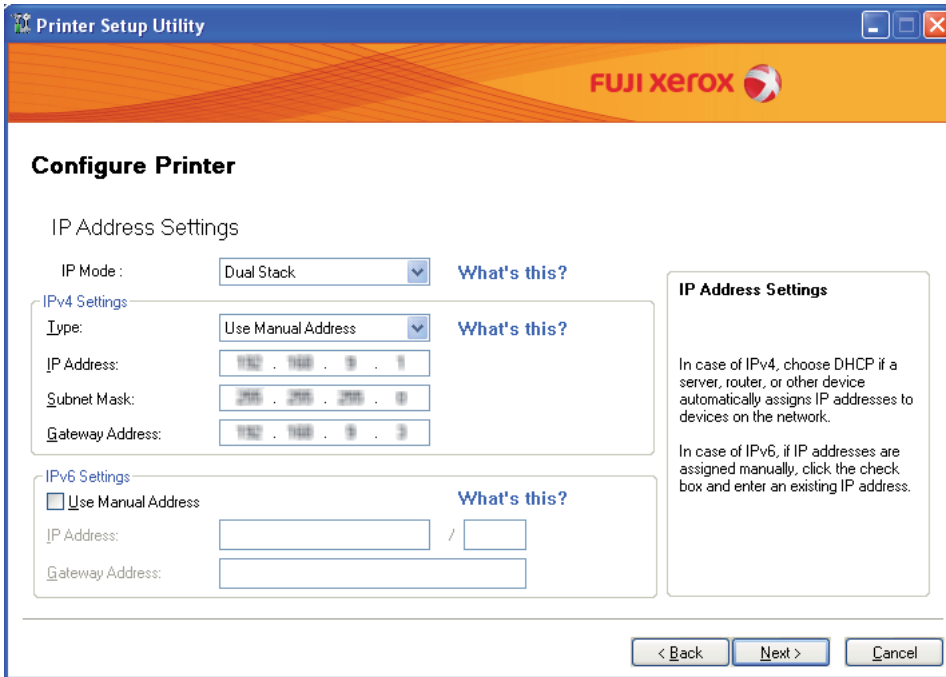
- 5 Select **Type of wireless network**.
- 6 Configure the security setting, and then click **Next**.
The "IP Address Settings" screen appears.
- 7 Select **IP Mode** depending on your network scheme.
When **IPv4** is selected, configure the following:
 - a Select **Type**.
 - b If you have selected **Use Manual Address** from **Type**, enter the following items:
 - **IP Address** of your printer
 - **Subnet Mask**

- **Gateway Address**

When **Dual Stack** is selected, configure the following:

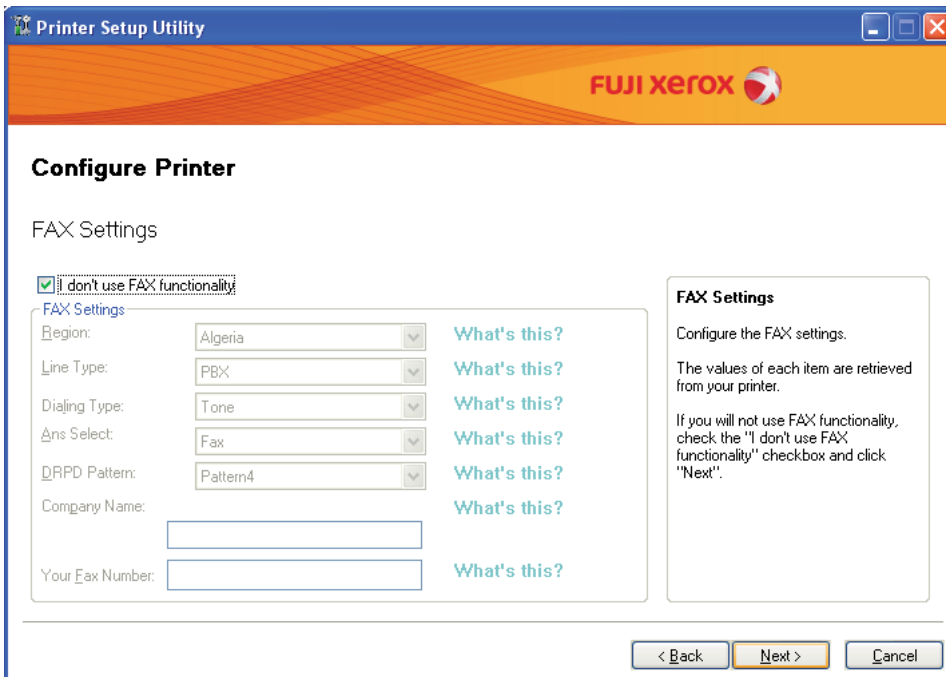
- a Configure **IPv4 Settings**.
- b If you have selected the **Use Manual Address** check box under **IPv6 Settings**, enter the following items:
 - **IP Address** of your printer

- **Gateway Address**



8 Click **Next**.

The "FAX Settings" screen appears.



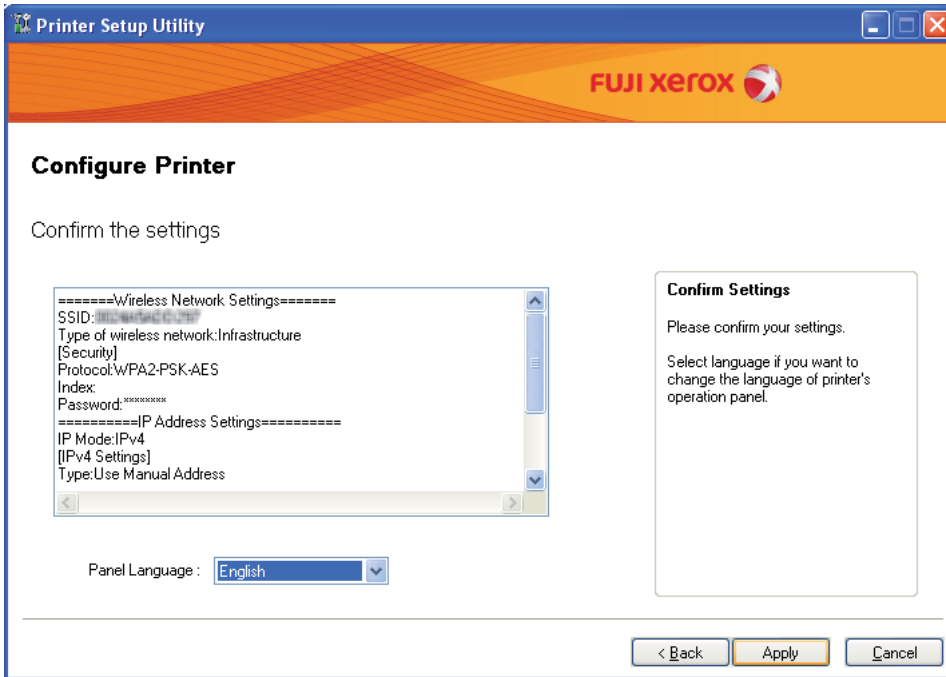
9 Configure the fax settings if necessary.

NOTE:

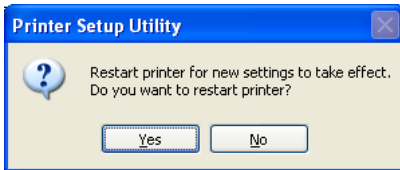
- If you will not use the fax feature, select the **I don't use FAX functionality** check box.

10 Click **Next**.

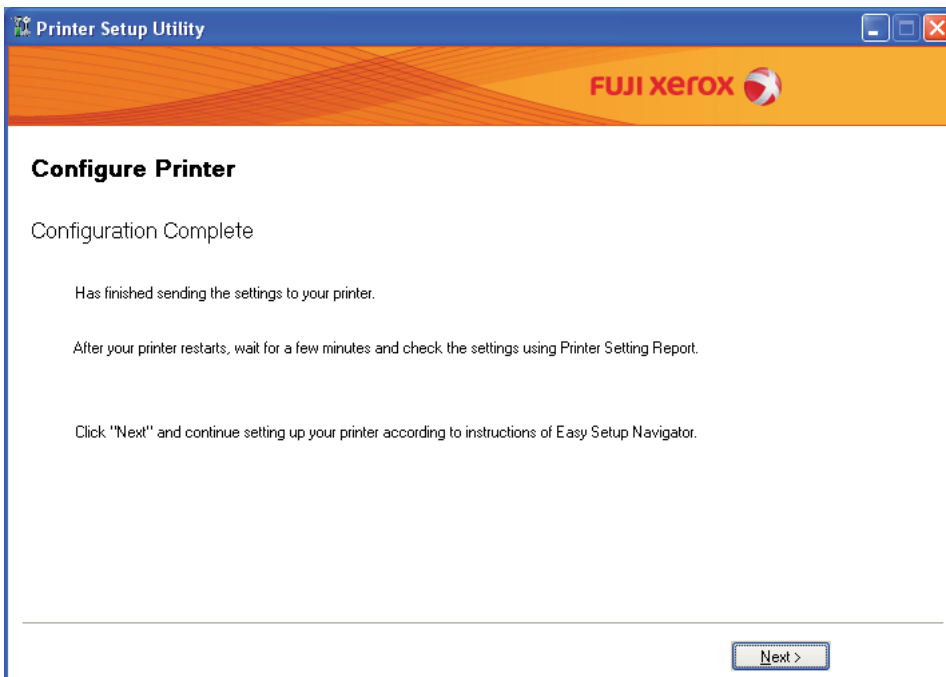
- 11 Ensure that the wireless settings are displayed, and then click **Apply**.



- 12 Click **Yes** to restart your printer.



The "Configuration Complete" screen appears.

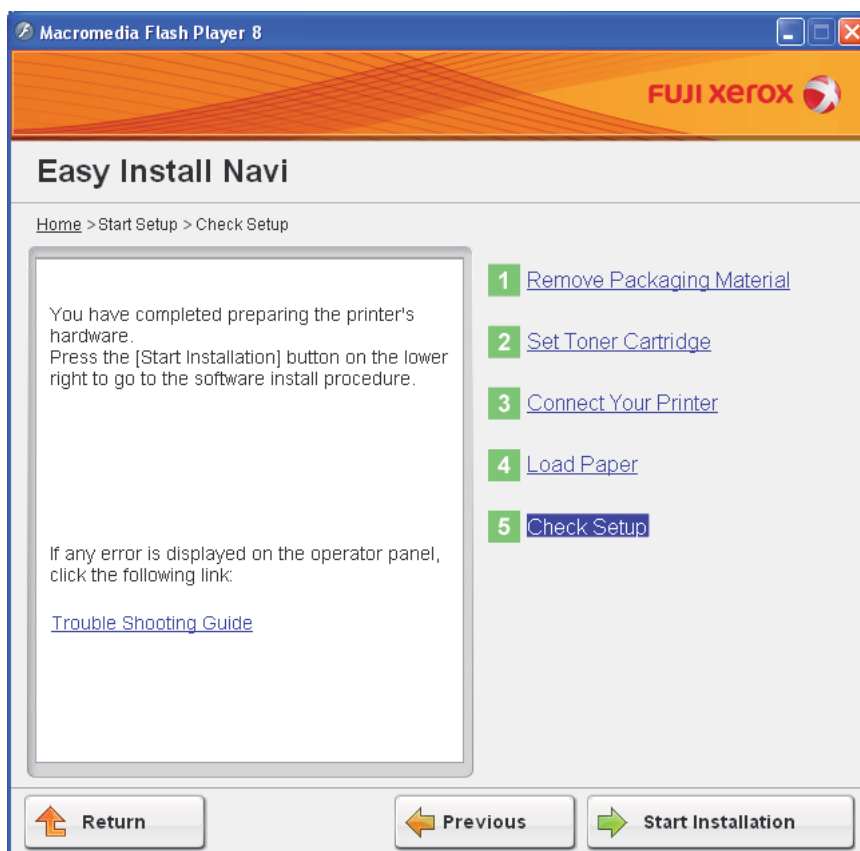


- 13 Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.
- 14 Click **Next**.
- 15 Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.
- 16 Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.
See "[Printing a System Settings Page](#)" on page 182
- 17 Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

NOTE:

- When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured. To reconfigure the wireless settings, click **Return**.

- 18 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.
If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.



- 19 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, click **I accept the terms of the license agreement** to continue the installation process, and then click **Next**.
- 20 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

NOTE:

- If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:
 - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
 - Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

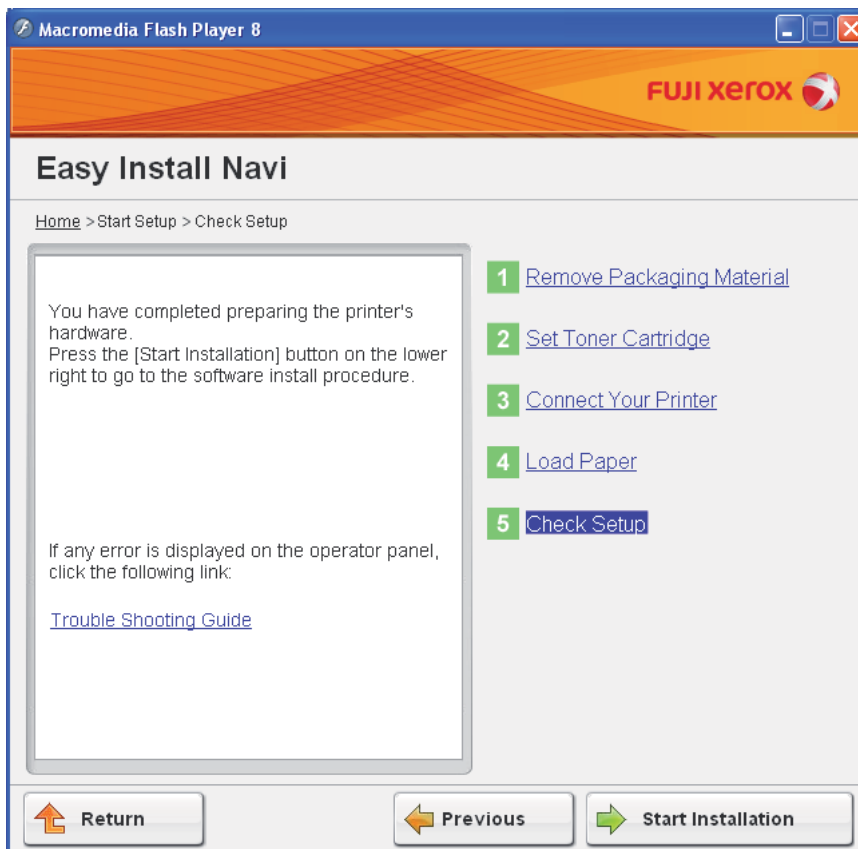
- 21 Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.
- 22 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.
- 23 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.
The wireless configuration is complete.

• WPS-PIN

NOTE:

- WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN code to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.
- Before WPS-PIN starts, you will need to enter your PIN code at the web page of the wireless access point. See the access point manual for the details.

- 1 Select **WPS-PIN**, and then click **Next**.
- 2 Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.
- 3 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.
If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.



- 4 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, click **I accept the terms of the license agreement** to continue the installation process, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

NOTE:

- If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:
 - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
 - Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

- 6 Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.

7 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

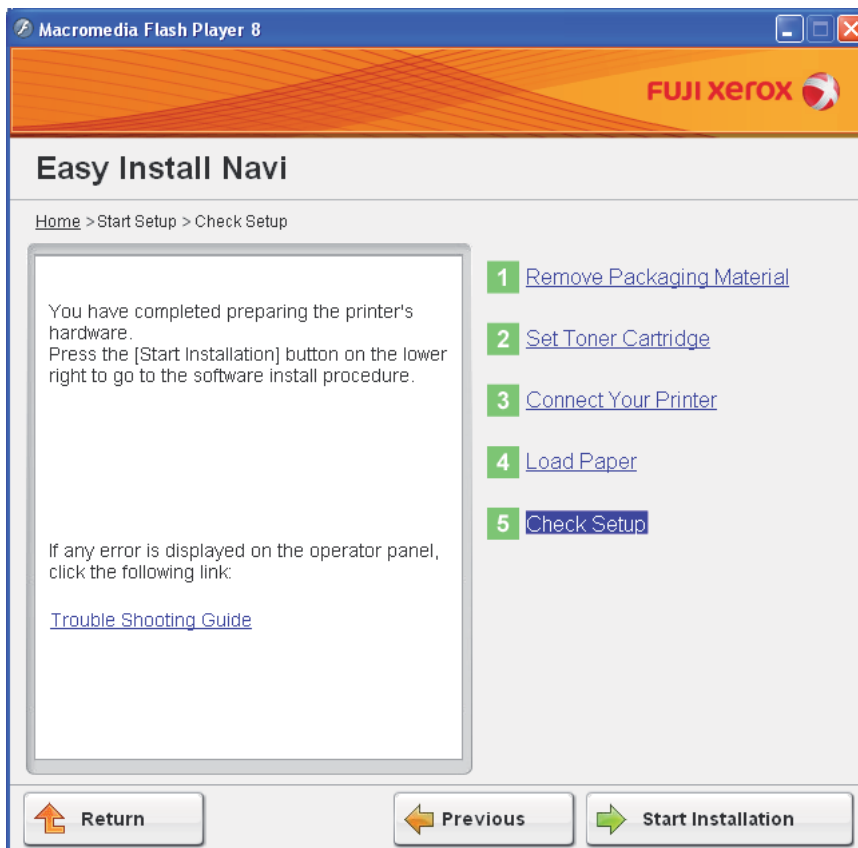
When the **WPS-PIN** operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection is completed.

• WPS-PBC

NOTE:

- WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

- 1 Select **WPS-PBC**, and then click **Next**.
- 2 Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.
- 3 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.
If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.



- 4 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, click **I accept the terms of the license agreement** to continue the installation process, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

NOTE:

- If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:
 - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
 - Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

- 6 Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.
- 7 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

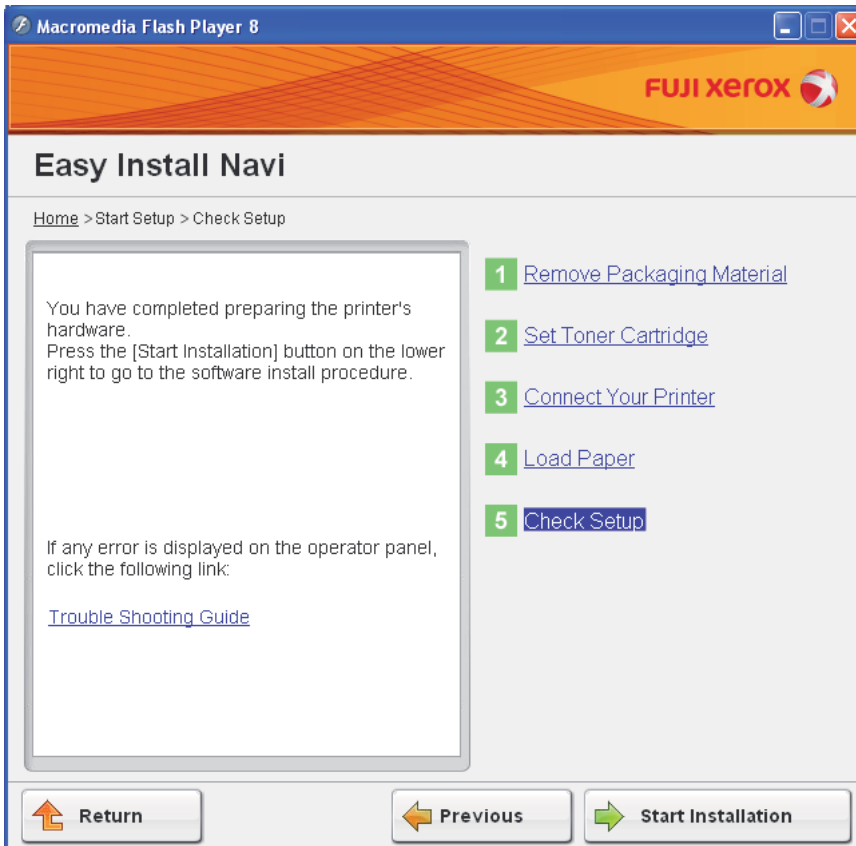
NOTE:

- For **WPS-PBC** operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.

When the **WPS-PBC** operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection is completed.

• Operator Panel

- 1 Select **Operator Panel**, and then click **Next**.
- 2 Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.
- 3 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.
If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.



- 4 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, click **I accept the terms of the license agreement** to continue the installation process, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

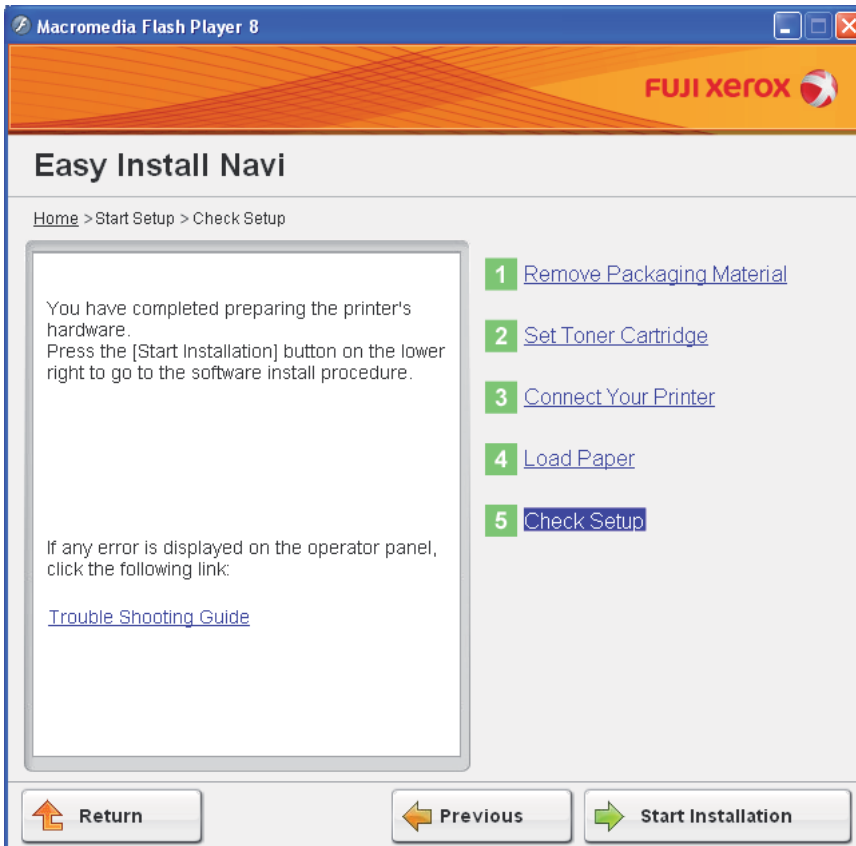
NOTE:

- If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:
 - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
 - Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

- 6 Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.
- 7 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.
- 8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.
The wireless configuration is complete.

• CentreWare Internet Services

- 1 Select **CentreWare Internet Services**, and then click **Next**.
- 2 Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.
- 3 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.
If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.



- 4 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, click **I accept the terms of the license agreement** to continue the installation process, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

NOTE:

- If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:
 - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
 - Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

- 6 Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.
- 7 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.
- 8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

When the CentreWare Internet Services operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection is completed.

Setting up a New Wireless Network Environment for Your Computer (When You Need to Setup Your Wireless Connectivity With Your Computer)

• For DHCP Network:

- 1 Setting up your computer for wireless connectivity:

NOTE:

- You can also change the wireless settings using the wireless application that may be installed in your computer.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

- a Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
- b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
- c Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.
- d Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is selected.

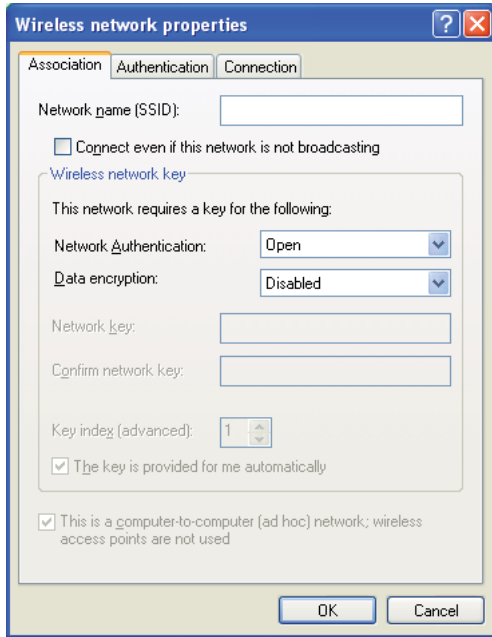
NOTE:

- Make note of the wireless settings on the **Advanced** window (step f) and the **Wireless network properties** window (step h). You may require these settings later.
- e Click the **Advanced** button.
 - f Select **Computer-to-computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.
 - g Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.
 - h On the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): xxxxxxxx (xxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use)

Network Authentication: Open

Data encryption: Disabled



- i Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.
- j Click **OK** to close the **Wireless Network Connection Properties** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select **xxxxxxxx** (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.
- f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select **xxxxxxxx** (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.
- f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

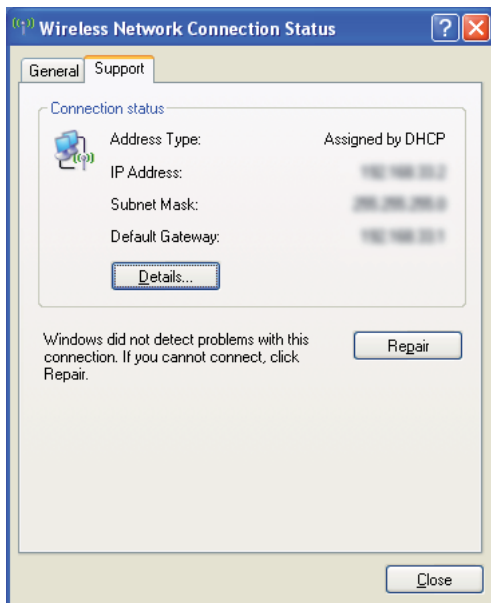
For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select **xxxxxxxx** (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

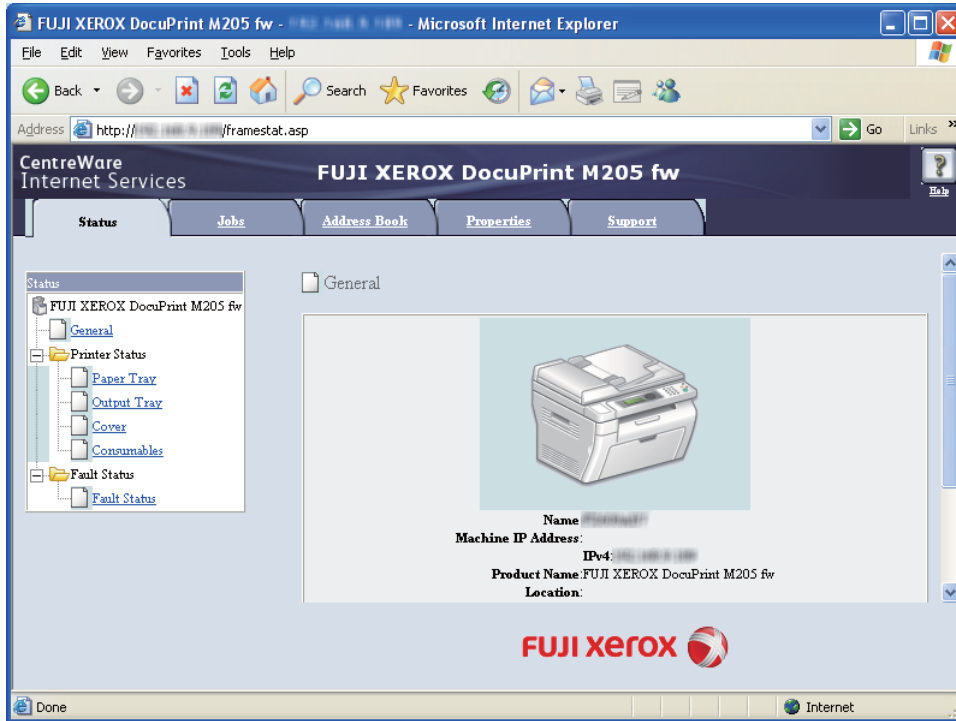
- 2 Check the IP address assigned by AutoIP on the printer.
 - a On the operator panel, press the **i** (**System**) button.
 - b Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the **OK** button.
 - c Select **Network**, and then press the **OK** button.
 - d Select **TCP/IP**, and then press the **OK** button.
 - e Select **IPv4**, and then press the **OK** button.
 - f Select **IP Address**, and then press the **OK** button.
(Default IP address range: 169.254.xxx.yyy)

```
IP Address
169.254.000.041*
```

- 3 Ensure that the IP Address on your computer is assigned by DHCP.



- 4 Launch your web browser.
- 5 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
CentreWare Internet Services appears.



- 6 Create wireless setting of the printer on CentreWare Internet Services.
- 7 Reboot the printer.
- 8 Restore the wireless settings on your computer.

NOTE:

- If the operating system on your computer provides a wireless configuration software, use it to change the wireless settings. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

- a Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
- b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
- c Select **Wireless Networks** tab.
- d Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is selected.
- e Click **Advanced**.
- f You can either set the printer to the ad-hoc mode or the infrastructure mode.
- For Ad hoc mode:
 - Select **Computer-to-computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the dialog box.
- For Infrastructure mode:
 - Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the dialog box.
- g Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.
- h Enter the setting that you will send to the printer and click **OK**.
- i Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.
- j Click **OK** to close the **Wireless Network Connection Properties** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.
- f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.
- f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

• For Fixed IP Networks:

1 Set up your computer for wireless connectivity:

NOTE:

- If the operating system on your computer provides a wireless configuration software, use it to change the wireless settings. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

- a Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
- b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
- c Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.
- d Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is selected.

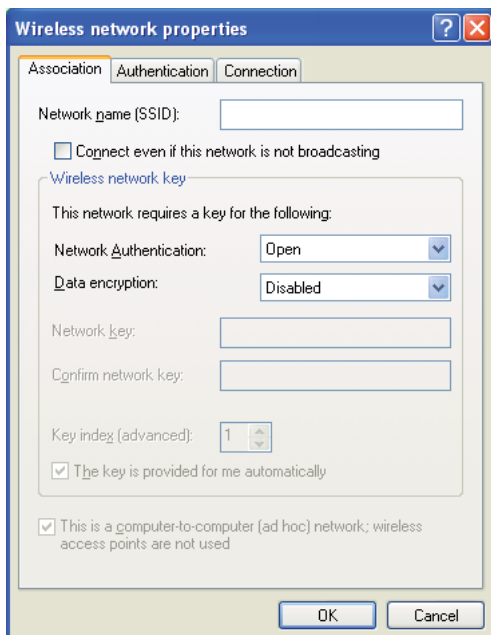
NOTE:

- a Be sure to write down the current wireless computer settings in step f and step h so that you can restore them later.
- b Click the **Advanced** button.
- c Select **Computer-to-computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.
- d Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.
- e On the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): xxxxxxxx (xxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use)

Network Authentication: Open

Data encryption: Disabled



- f Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.
- g Click **OK** to close the **Wireless Network Connection Properties** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select **xxxxxxx** (xxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.
- f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

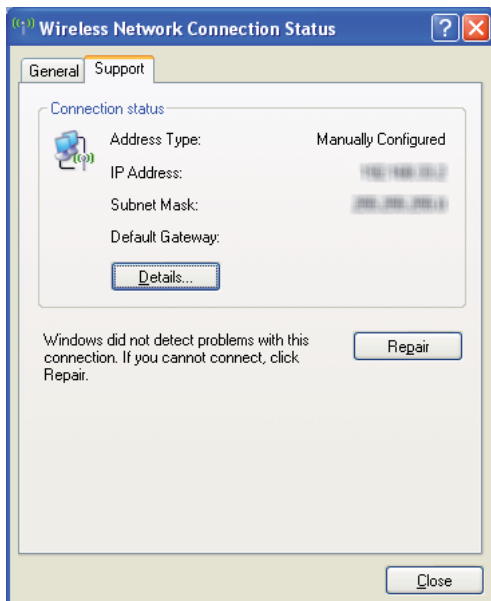
For Windows Server 2008:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select **xxxxxxx** (xxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.
- f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select **xxxxxxx** (xxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

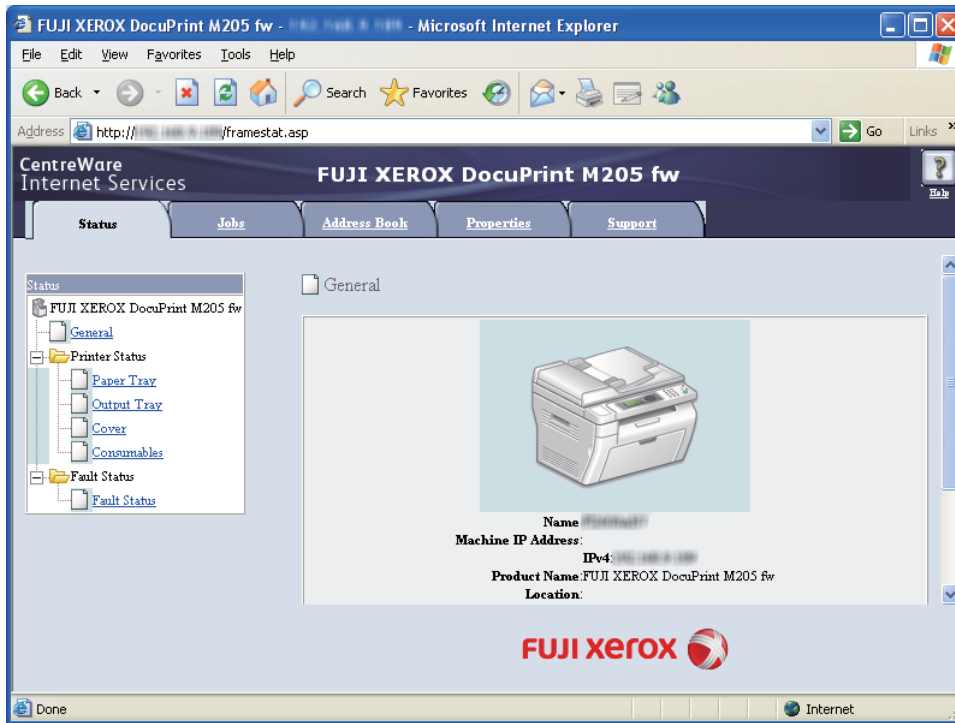
2 Check the IP address on your computer.



- 3** Set the IP address on the printer.
See "[Assigning an IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\)](#)" on page 77.

4 Launch your web browser.

- 5 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key. CentreWare Internet Services appears.



- 6 Change the wireless setting of the printer on CentreWare Internet Services.
- 7 Reboot the printer.
- 8 Restore the wireless settings on your computer.

NOTE:

- If the operating system on your computer provides a wireless configuration software, use it to change the wireless settings. Or you can change the wireless settings using the tool provided with the operating system. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

- a Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.
- b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.
- c Select **Wireless Networks** tab.
- d Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is selected.
- e Click **Advanced**.
- f You can either set the printer to the ad-hoc mode or the infrastructure mode.
 - For Ad hoc mode:
Select **Computer-to-computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the dialog box.
 - For Infrastructure mode:
Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the dialog box.
- g Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.
- h Enter the setting that you will send to the printer and click **OK**.

- i Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.
- j Click **OK** to close the **Wireless Network Connection Properties** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.
- f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.
- f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

- a Display **Control Panel**.
- b Select **Network and Internet**.
- c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.
- d Select **Connect to a network**.
- e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

■ Setting Up for Shared Printing (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Software Pack CD-ROM* that shipped with your printer, or using Windows Point and Print or peer-to-peer method. However, if you use either of the Microsoft methods you will not get features such as the SimpleMonitor and other printer utilities, which will get installed with the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

If you want to use the printer on a network, share the printer and install its drivers on all the computers on the network.

NOTE:

- You need to purchase a Ethernet cable separately for shared printing.
- **For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition**

- 1 Click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Right-click this printer icon and select **Properties**.
- 3 From the **Sharing** tab, select **Share this printer**, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
If the files are not present in your computer, and then you will be prompted to insert the server operating system CD.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Click **Change sharing options** button.
- 4 The "**Windows needs your permission to continue**" appears.
- 5 Click **Continue** button.
- 6 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 7 Select **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To check that the printer is shared:

- Ensure that the printer object in the **Printers, Printers and Faxes** or **Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The share icon is shown under the printer icon.
- Browse **Network** or **My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and look for the shared name you assigned to the printer.

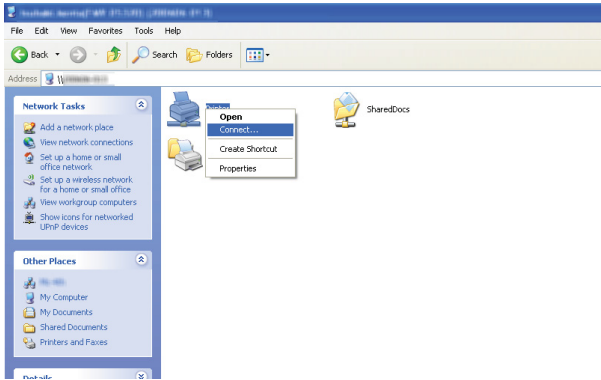
Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the Point and Print method or the peer-to-peer method.

Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the print driver.

- **For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition**

- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The time taken to copy varies based on the network traffic.

Close **My Network Places**.

- 4 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.
 - b Select the printer you have installed.
 - c Click **File** → **Properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate and double-click the host name of the server computer.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.
Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object is added to the **Printers** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound**.
 - b Select **Printers**.
 - c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.
When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
 - b Select **Hardware and Sound**.
 - c Select **Printers**.
 - d Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
 - e On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.
When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

• For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

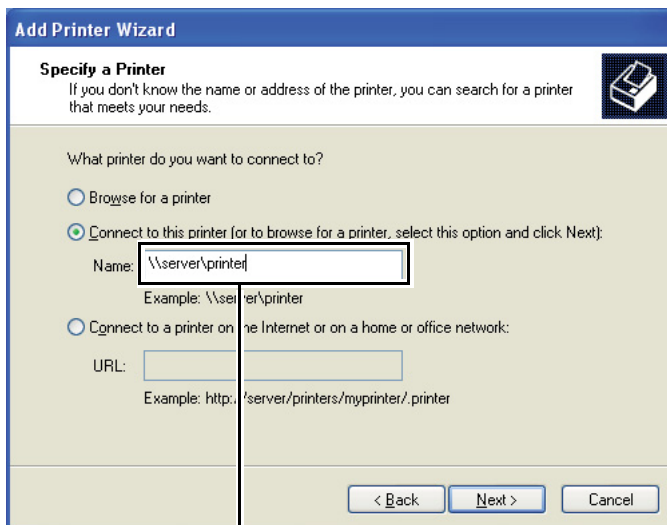
- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
 - b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
 - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the print driver is installed on each client computer. The client computers can modify the driver and handle the print jobs.

• For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** (**Add Printer** for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) to launch the **Add Printer Wizard**.
- 3 Click **Next**.
- 4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Select the printer, and then click **Next**. If the printer is not listed, click **Back** and enter in the path of the printer in the text box.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

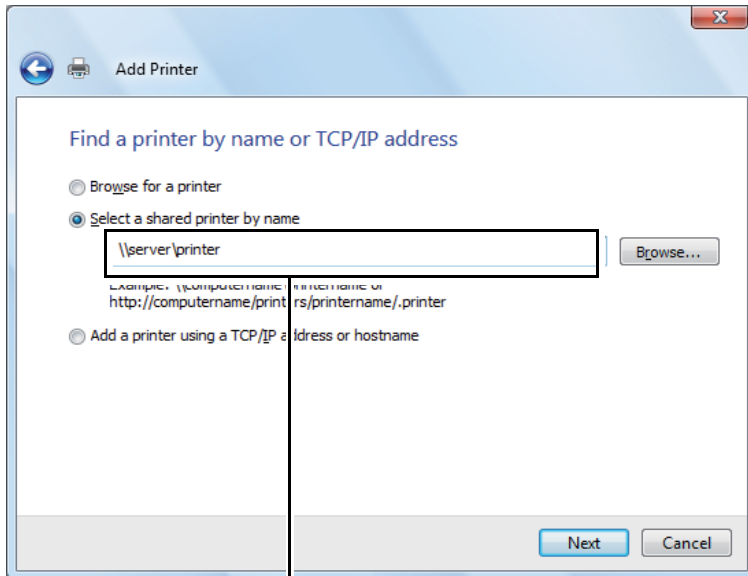
The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

- 7 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 8 Click **Finish**.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and enter in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

- 4 Confirm the printer name, and then select whether to use this printer as the default printer and click **Next**.
- 5 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.
- 6 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and enter in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

- 4 Confirm the printer name, and then select whether to use this printer as the default printer and click **Next**.
- 5 Select whether to share this printer or not.
- 6 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.
- 7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

• For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and enter in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to the available drivers.

- 4 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Select whether to use this printer as the default printer.
- 6 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.
- 7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X

This section includes:

- ["Configuring Wireless Settings on the Operator Panel \(DocuPrint M205 fw Only\)"](#) on page 128
- ["Installing the Drivers and Software"](#) on page 133

■ Configuring Wireless Settings on the Operator Panel (DocuPrint M205 fw Only)

You can configure wireless settings on the operator panel.

IMPORTANT:

- The Wireless LAN feature is unavailable depending on the region you purchased.
- Be sure to get the SSID and security information from a system administrator in advance when you use other than WPS to configure wireless settings.
- Ensure that the Ethernet cable has been disconnected from the printer before you configure the wireless settings.

NOTE:

- Before you configure the wireless settings on the operator panel, you need to set up the wireless network settings on your computer. For details, see the Setup Guide.
- For information on the specifications of the wireless LAN feature, see "[Configuring Wireless Settings \(DocuPrint M205 fw Only\)](#)" on page 88.

You can select a method to configure a wireless setting from the following:

Manual Setup For	Access Point (Infrastructure) Network
	Computer-to-computer (Ad-hoc) Network
Automatic Setup Using	WPS-PIN ^{*1}
	WPS-PBC ^{*2}

^{*1} WPS-PIN is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN code in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

^{*2} WPS-PBC is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

This section includes:









- "[Manual Setup](#)" on page 128
- "[Auto Setup With the Access Point](#)" on page 130

Manual Setup

You can manually configure wireless settings to connect your printer to an access point (infrastructure) network or computer-to-computer (ad-hoc) network.


• Connecting to Access Point Network

To configure the wireless settings through an access point such as a wireless router:

- 1 On the operator panel, press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Wireless Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Manual Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Enter the SSID, and then press the  button.
Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired value, and press the ◀ or ▶ button to move a cursor.
- 7 Select `Infrastructure`, and then press the  button.
- 8 Select an encryption type, and then press the  button.

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

- 9 Enter the WEP key or pass phrase, and then press the  button.
Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired value, and press the ◀ or ▶ button to move a cursor.














When you select `WEP (64Bit)` or `WEP (128Bit)` for an encryption type at step 8, select a transmit key after entering the WEP key.
- 10 Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.
- 11 Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.
See ["Printing a System Settings Page" on page 182](#).
- 12 Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

NOTE:

- When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured.

• Using Ad Hoc Connection

To configure the wireless settings for an ad-hoc connection where the wireless devices communicate directly with each other without an access point:

- 1 On the operator panel, press the  (**System**) button.
 - 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
 - 3 Select `Network`, and then press the  button.
 - 4 Select `Wireless Setup`, and then press the  button.
 - 5 Select `Manual Setup`, and then press the  button.
 - 6 Enter the SSID, and then press the  button.
Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired value, and press the  or  button to move a cursor.
 - 7 Select `Ad-hoc`, and then press the  button.
 - 8 Select an encryption type, and then press the  button.
- IMPORTANT:**
- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.
- 9 Enter the WEP key, and then press the  button.
Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired value, and press the  or  button to move a cursor.
 - 10 Select a transmit key.
 - 11 Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.
 - 12 Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.
See ["Printing a System Settings Page" on page 182](#).
 - 13 Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

NOTE:

- When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured.








Auto Setup With the Access Point

If the access point such as a wireless router supports the WPS, security settings can be made automatically.

• WPS-PBC

NOTE:

- WPS-PBC is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

- 1 On the operator panel, press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Wireless Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `WPS`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Push Button Control`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select `Yes`, and then press the  button.
- 8 Press and hold the WPS button on the access point.
- 9 Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.
- 10 Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.
See "[Printing a System Settings Page](#)" on page 182.
- 11 Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

NOTE:

- When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured.

• WPS-PIN

NOTE:

- WPS-PIN is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN code to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.
- Before WPS-PIN starts, you will need to enter your PIN code at the web page of the wireless access point. See the access point manual for the details.

- 1 On the operator panel, press the **i** (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select `Network`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select `Wireless Setup`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select `WPS`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 6 Select `PIN Code`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 7 Take a note of PIN code displayed on the operator panel.
- 8 Select `Start Configuration`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 9 If SSID selection screen appears, select the SSID, and then press the **OK** button.
- 10 Enter the PIN code of the printer at the web page of the wireless access point.
- 11 Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.
- 12 Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.
See ["Printing a System Settings Page" on page 182](#).
- 13 Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

NOTE:

- When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured.

■ Installing the Drivers and Software

The following procedure uses Mac OS X 10.6 as an example.

- 1 Run the *Software Pack CD-ROM* on the Mac OS X.
- 2 Double-click the installer icon.
- 3 Click **Continue** on the **Introduction** screen.
- 4 Select a language for the **Software License Agreement**.
- 5 After reading the **Software License Agreement**, click **Continue**.
- 6 If you agree to the terms of the **Software License Agreement**, click **Agree** to continue the installation process.
- 7 Click **Continue** if **Select a Destination** screen appears.
- 8 Click **Install** to perform the standard installation.
- 9 Enter the administrator's name and password, and then click **OK**.
- 10 Click **Continue Installation**.
- 11 Click **Restart** to complete installation.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5/10.6

• When Using a USB connection

- 1 Turn off the printer and your computer.
- 2 Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.
- 3 Turn on the printer and your computer.
- 4 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.
- 5 Confirm your USB printer is added to **Print & Fax**.
If your USB printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.
- 6 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **Default**.
- 7 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.
Name, **Location**, and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 8 Click **Add**.

• When Using Bonjour (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, ensure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **Default**.
- 5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 6 Click **Add**.

• When Using IP Printing (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, ensure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **IP**.
- 5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.
- 6 Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

NOTE:

- When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

- 7 Click **Add**.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4

• When Using a USB Connection

- 1 Turn off the printer and your computer.
- 2 Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.
- 3 Turn on the printer and your computer.
- 4 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

NOTE:

- You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.

- 5 Confirm your USB printer is added to **Printer List**.
If your USB printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.
- 6 Click **Add**.
- 7 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 8 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.
Name, **Location** and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 9 Click **Add**.

• When Using Bonjour (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

- 1 Turn on the printer.
 - 2 Ensure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, ensure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
 - 3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.
- ### NOTE:
- You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.
- 4 Click **Add**.
 - 5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
 - 6 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
 - 7 Click **Add**.

• When Using IP Printing (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that your computer is connected to the network.

If you use wired connection, ensure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

NOTE:

- You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add**.

5 Click **IP Printer** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

6 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.

7 Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.

Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

NOTE:

- When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

8 Click **Add**.

Printing Basics

This chapter includes:

- ["About Print Media" on page 138](#)
- ["Supported Print Media" on page 143](#)
- ["Loading Print Media" on page 147](#)
- ["Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 168](#)
- ["Printing" on page 171](#)
- ["Printing with Web Services on Devices \(WSD\) \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 186](#)

About Print Media

This section includes:

- ["Print Media Usage Guidelines" on page 139](#)
- ["Automatic Document Feeder \(ADF\) Guidelines \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 140](#)
- ["Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer" on page 141](#)
- ["Print Media Storage Guidelines" on page 142](#)

Using paper that is not appropriate for the printer can cause paper jams, image quality problems, or printer failure. To achieve the best performance from your printer, we recommend you to use only the paper described in this section.

When using paper other than that recommended, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Print Media Usage Guidelines

The printer tray accommodates various sizes and types of paper and other specialty media. Follow these guidelines when loading paper and media:

- Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.
- For 60 to 135 gsm (16 to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long, where the paper fibers run along the length of the paper, is recommended. For paper heavier than 135 gsm (36 lb bond), grain short, where the paper fibers run along the width of the paper, is preferred.
- Envelopes can be printed from the multipurpose feeder (MPF) and priority sheet inserter (PSI).
- Fan paper or other specialty media before loading in the tray.
- Do not print on label stock once a label has been removed from a sheet.
- Use only paper envelopes. Do not use envelopes with windows, metal clasps, or adhesives with release strips.
- Print all envelopes single-sided only.
- Some wrinkling and embossing may occur when printing envelopes.
- Do not overload the tray. Do not load print media above the fill line on the inside of the paper width guides.
- Adjust the paper width guides to fit the paper size.
- If excessive jams or wrinkles occur, use paper or other media from a new package.

WARNING:

- **Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.**

See also:

- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 150](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 158](#)
- ["Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 153](#)
- ["Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 159](#)
- ["Printing on Custom Size Paper" on page 179](#)

■ Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Guidelines (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

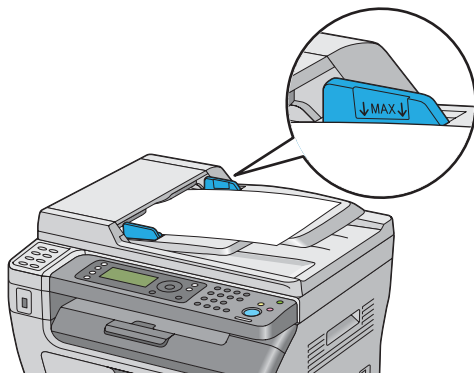
The ADF accommodates the following original sizes:

- Width: 148–215.9 mm (5.83–8.50 inches)
- Length: 210–355.6 mm (8.27–14.00 inches)

The weight range includes 60–105 gsm.







Follow these guidelines when loading original documents into the ADF:

- Load documents face up so that the top of the document enters the printer first.
- Place only loose sheets of paper in the ADF.
- Adjust the document guides so that they fit against the documents.
- Insert paper in the document feeder tray only when the ink on the paper is completely dry.
- Do not load documents above the MAX fill line. You can load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents.



NOTE:

- You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

 Curled originals	 Pre-punched paper
 Lightweight originals	 Folded, creased or torn originals
 Cut and paste originals	 Carbon paper

■ Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer

Your printer is designed to use a variety of media types for print jobs. However, some media can cause poor output quality, increased paper jams, or damage to your printer.

Unacceptable media includes:

- Paper that is too heavyweight or too lightweight (less than 60 gsm or more than 190 gsm)
- Transparencies
- Photo paper or coated paper
- Tracing paper
- Illumination film
- Special ink jet printer paper and ink jet transparencies
- Static-cling paper
- Pasted-up or glued paper
- Specially coated paper
- Color paper with surface treatments
- Paper that uses ink that deteriorates with heat
- Photosensitive paper
- Carbon paper or carbonless copy paper
- Paper with a rough surface, such as Japanese paper, pulp paper or fibrous paper
- Envelopes that are not flat, or that have clasps, windows or adhesives with release strips
- Padded envelopes
- Tack film
- Water transfer paper
- Textile transfer paper
- Perforated paper
- Leather paper, embossed paper
- Conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper
- Wrinkled, creased, folded, or ripped paper
- Damp or wet paper
- Wavy or curled paper
- Paper with staples, clips, ribbons, or tape
- Label paper with some labels already peeled off, or that are partially cut off
- Paper pre-printed by another printer or copier
- Paper pre-printed all over rear side



WARNING:

- **Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.**

■ Print Media Storage Guidelines

Providing good storage conditions for your paper and other media contributes to optimum print quality.

- Store print media in dark, cool, relatively dry locations. Most paper items are susceptible to damage from ultraviolet (UV) and visible light. UV radiation, which is emitted by the sun and fluorescent bulbs, is particularly damaging to paper items. The intensity and length of exposure to visible light on paper items should be reduced as much as possible.
- Maintain constant temperatures and relative humidity.
- Avoid attics, kitchens, garages, and basements for storing print media.
- Store print media flat. Print media should be stored on pallets, cartons, shelves, or in cabinets.
- Avoid having food or drinks in the area where print media is stored or handled.
- Do not open sealed packages of paper until you are ready to load them into the printer. Leave paper in the original packaging. For most commercial cut-size grades, the ream wrapper contains an inner lining that protects the paper from moisture loss or gain.
- Leave the media inside the bag until you are ready to use it; reinsert unused media in the bag and reseal it for protection. Some specialty media is packaged inside resealable plastic bags.

Supported Print Media

Using unsuitable print media may lead to paper jams, poor print quality, breakdown and damage to your printer. To use the features of this printer effectively, use the suggested print media that is recommended here.

IMPORTANT:

- The toner may come off the print media, if it gets wet by water, rain, steam and so on. For details, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Usable Print Media

The types of print media that can be used on this printer are as follows:

MPF

Paper Size	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm) B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm) A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm) Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches) Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches) Legal 13 (Folio) SEF (8.5 × 13 inches) Legal 14 SEF (8.5 × 14 inches) Statement SEF (139.7 × 215.9 mm) Envelope Com-10 SEF (4.125 × 9.5 inches) Envelope Monarch SEF (3.875 × 7.5 inches) Envelope Monarch LEF (7.5 × 3.875 inches)* Envelope DL SEF (110 × 220 mm) Envelope DL LEF (220 × 110 mm)* Envelope C5 SEF (162 × 229 mm) Postcard (100 × 148 mm) Postcard (148 × 200 mm) Yougata 2 SEF (114 × 162 mm) Yougata 2 LEF (162 × 114 mm)* Yougata 3 SEF (98 × 148 mm) Yougata 3 LEF (148 × 98 mm)* Yougata 4 (105 × 235 mm) Yougata 6 (98 × 190 mm) Younaga 3 (120 × 235 mm) Nagagata 3 (120 × 235 mm) Nagagata 4 (90 × 205 mm) Kakugata 3 (216 × 277 mm) Custom size: Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3–8.5 inches) Length: 148.5–355.6 mm (5.85–14 inches)
Paper Type	Plain Lightweight Cardstock Labels Envelope Recycled Postcard JPN
Loading Capacity	150 sheets of standard paper

* Monarch, DL, Yougata 2, and Yougata 3 envelopes can be supported by LEF with their flap open.

PSI

Paper Size	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm) B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm) A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm) Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches) Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches) Legal 13 (Folio) SEF (8.5 × 13 inches) Legal 14 SEF (8.5 × 14 inches) Statement SEF (139.7 × 215.9 mm) Envelope Com-10 SEF (4.125 × 9.5 inches) Envelope Monarch SEF (3.875 × 7.5 inches) Envelope Monarch LEF (7.5 × 3.875 inches)* Envelope DL SEF (110 × 220 mm) Envelope DL LEF (220 × 110 mm)* Envelope C5 SEF (162 × 229 mm) Yougata 2 SEF (114 × 162 mm) Yougata 2 LEF (162 × 114 mm)* Yougata 3 SEF (98 × 148 mm) Yougata 3 LEF (148 × 98 mm)* Yougata 4 (105 × 235 mm) Yougata 6 (98 × 190 mm) Younaga 3 (120 × 235 mm) Nagagata 3 (120 × 235 mm) Nagagata 4 (90 × 205 mm) Kakugata 3 (216 × 277 mm) Custom size: Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3–8.5 inches) Length: 190.5–355.6 mm (7.5 –14 inches)
Paper Type	Plain Lightweight Cardstock Labels Envelope Recycled
Loading Capacity	10 sheets of standard paper

* Monarch, DL, Yougata 2, and Yougata 3 envelopes can be supported by LEF with their flap open.

NOTE:

- SEF and LEF indicate the paper feed direction; SEF stands for short-edge feed. LEF stands for long-edge feed.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

See also:

- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 150](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 158](#)

- ["Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 153](#)
- ["Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 159](#)

Printing on print media that differs from the paper size or paper type selected on the print driver may lead to paper jams. To ensure that printing is correctly done, select the correct paper size and paper type.

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually on the print media package.

NOTE:

- After loading paper in the feeder, specify the same paper type on the operator panel.

■ Capacity

The MPF can hold:

- 150 sheets of standard paper
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of thick paper
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of post cards
- Five envelopes
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of labels

The PSI can hold:

- 10 sheets of standard paper or one sheet of other paper

■ Print Media Dimensions

The MPF accepts print media within the following dimensions:

- Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3.00–8.50 inches)
- Length: 148.5–355.6 mm (5.85–14.00 inches)

The PSI accepts print media within the following dimensions:

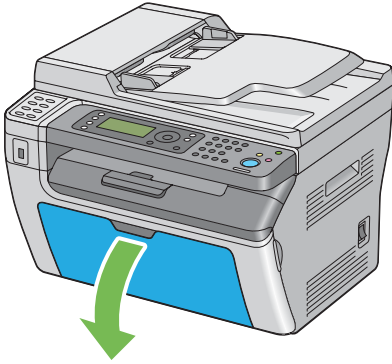
- Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3.00–8.50 inches)
- Length: 190.5–355.6 mm (7.50–14.00 inches)

■ Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

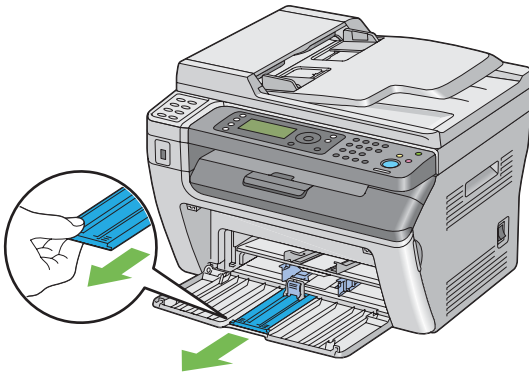
NOTE:

- To avoid paper jams, do not remove the paper cover while printing is in progress.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

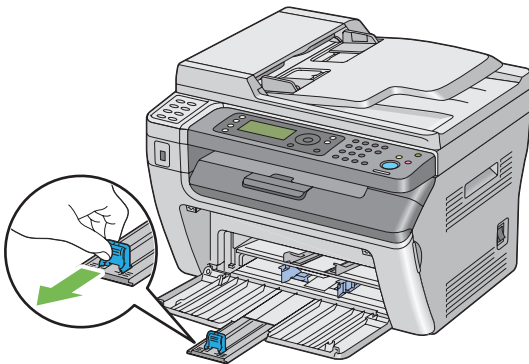
- 1 Open the front cover.



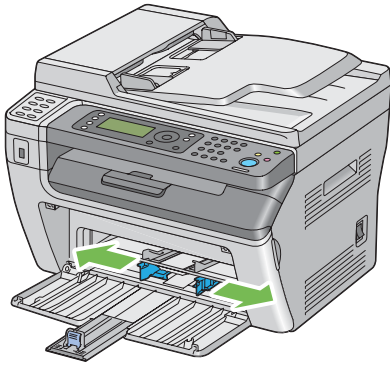
- 2 Pull the slide bar forward until it stops.



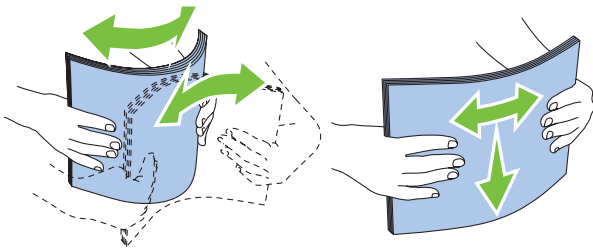
- 3 Pull the length guide forward until it stops.



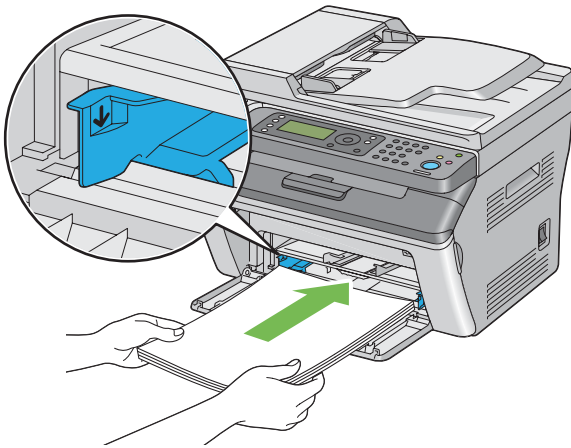
- 4 Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum width.



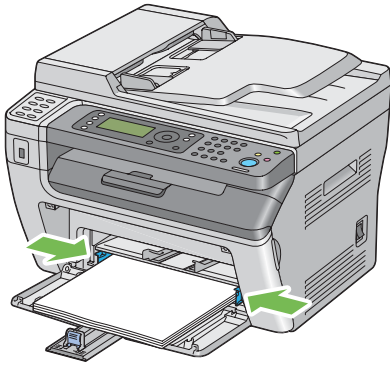
- 5** Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



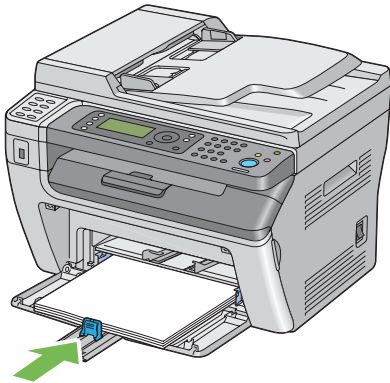
- 6** Load print media on the MPF with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.



- 7** Adjust the paper width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.

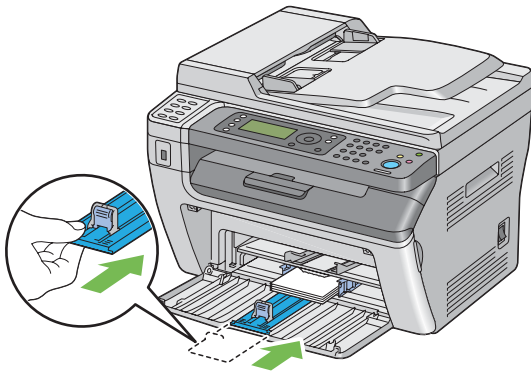


- 8 Slide the length guide towards the printer until it touches the print media.

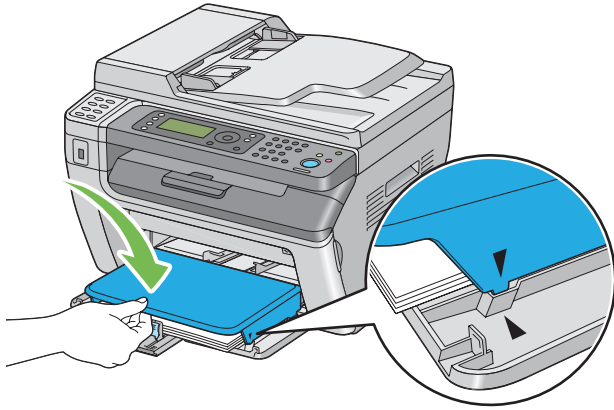


NOTE:

- Depending on the size of print media, first slide the slide bar backward until it stops, and then pinch the length guide and slide it backward until it touches print media.



- 9 Insert the paper cover into the printer and then align the paper cover to the marking on the paper tray.



- 10** Select the paper type from the print driver if the loaded print media is not plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the MPF, you must specify the paper size setting by using the print driver.

NOTE:

- For more information about setting the paper size and type on the print driver, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

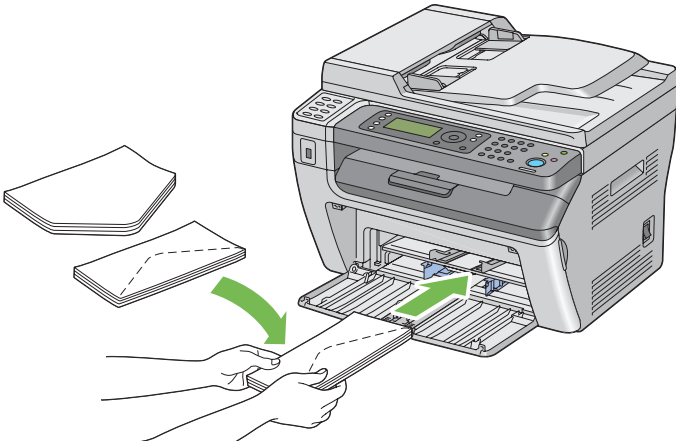
Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

NOTE:

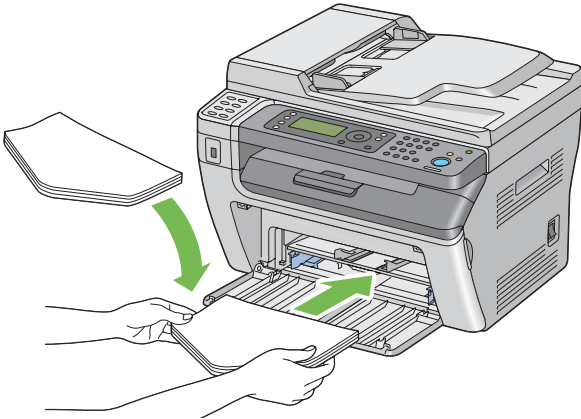
- When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the print driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

• When Loading Com-10, DL, Monarch, Yougata 2/3/4/6, or Younaga 3

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.



To prevent DL, Monarch, Yougata 2, and Yougata 3 from being wrinkled, they are recommended to be loaded with the print-side facing up, flap opened, and facing you.

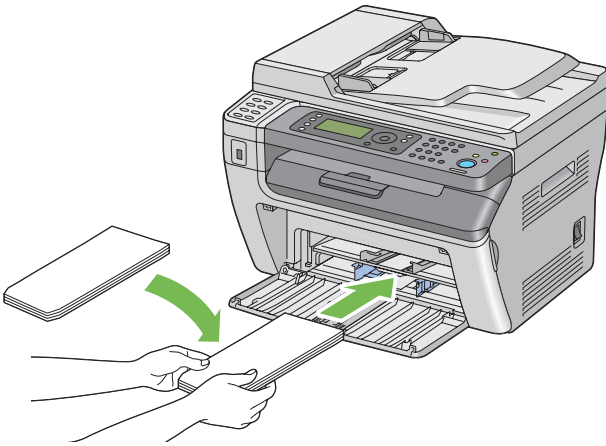


NOTE:

- When you load the envelopes in the long-edge feed (LEF) orientation, be sure to specify the landscape orientation on the print driver.

• When Loading C5, Nagagata 3/4 or Kakugata 3

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, flap opened, and facing you.

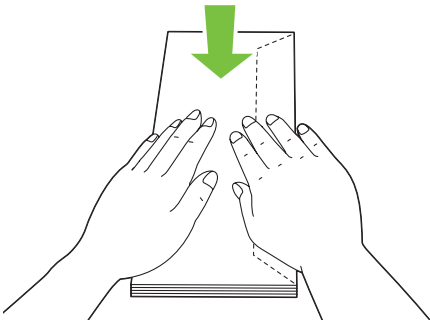


IMPORTANT:

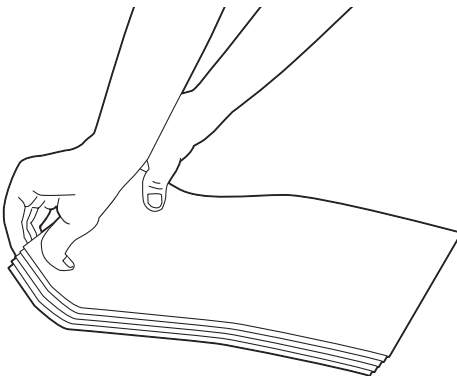
- Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

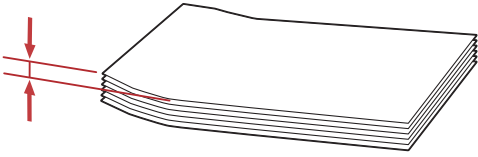
NOTE:

- If you do not load envelopes in the MPF right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the MPF.



- If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration. The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.





- To confirm the correct orientation of each print media such as envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the print driver.

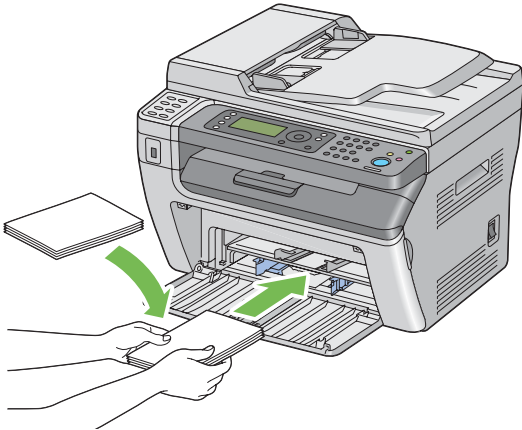
Loading Postcard in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

NOTE:

- When you print on postcards, be sure to specify the postcard setting on the print driver to get the optimum print result.

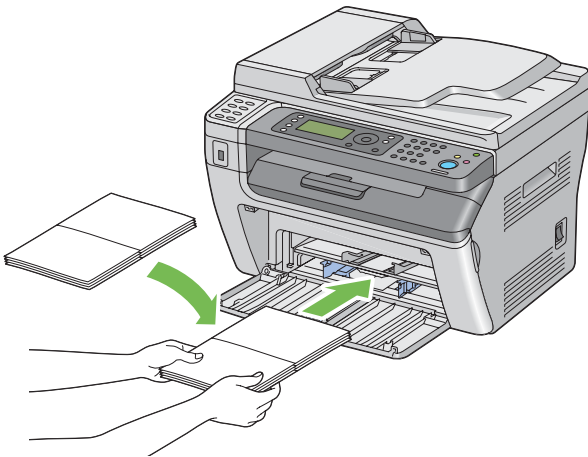
• When Loading Postcard

Load the postcard with the side to be printed on facing up, and the top edge of the postcard in first.



• When Loading W-Postcard

Load the w-postcard with the side to be printed on facing up, and the left edge of the w-postcard in first.



NOTE:

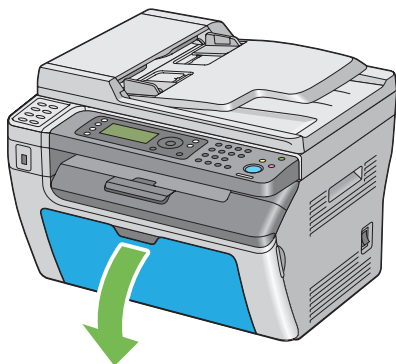
- To confirm the correct orientation of each print media such as postcards, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the print driver.

■ Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

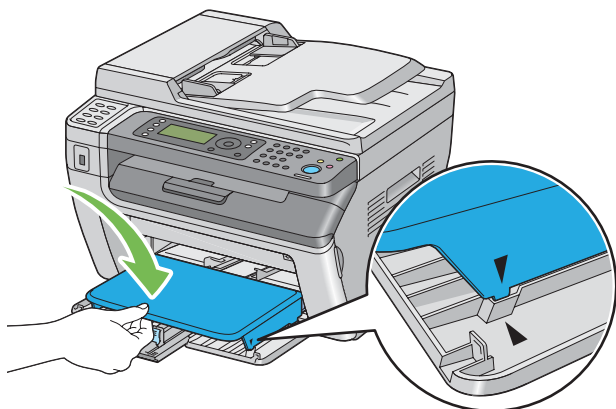
NOTE:

- To avoid paper jams, do not remove the paper cover while printing is in progress.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

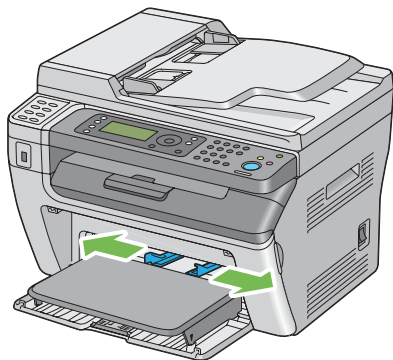
- 1 Open the front cover.



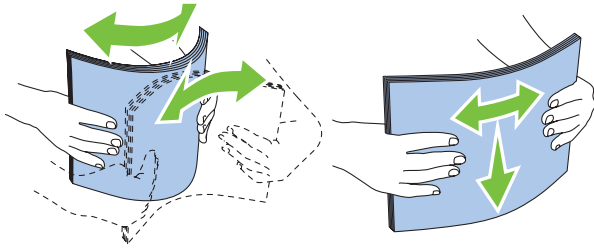
- 2 Insert the paper cover into the printer and then align the paper cover to the marking on the paper tray.



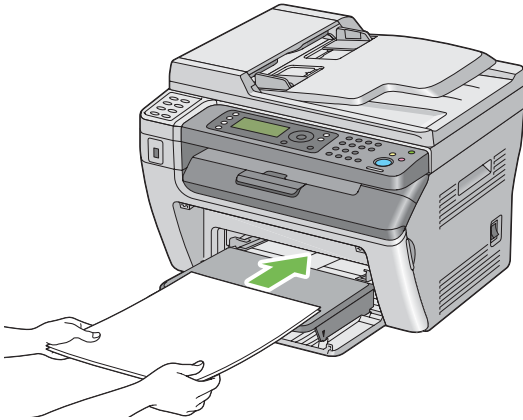
- 3 Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum width.



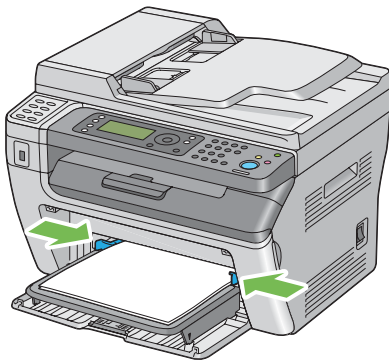
- 4 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



- 5 Load print media on the paper cover with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.



- 6 Adjust the paper width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.



- 7 Select the paper type from the print driver if the loaded print media is not plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the PSI, you must specify the paper size setting by using the print driver.

NOTE:

- For more information about setting the paper size and type on the print driver, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

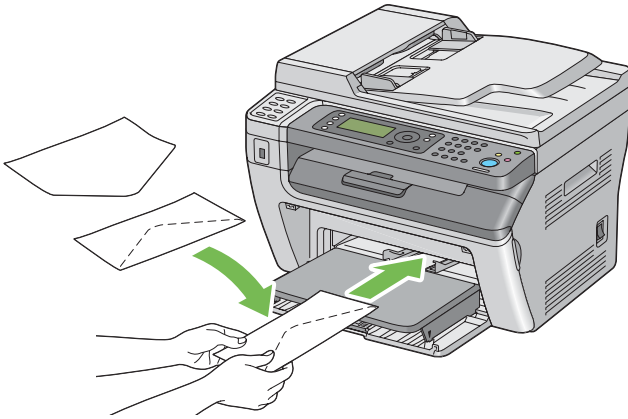
Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

NOTE:

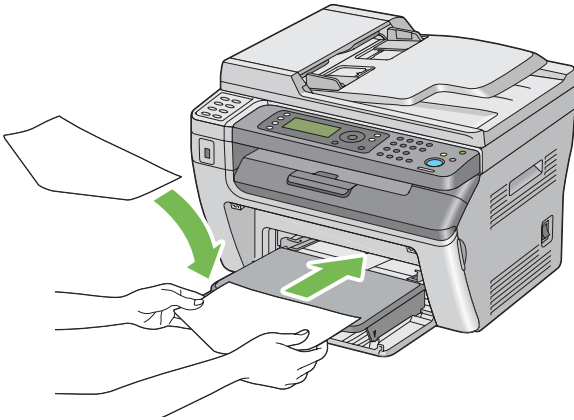
- Be sure to fully insert the envelope until it stops. Otherwise, print media that is loaded on the MPF will be fed.
- When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the print driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

• When Loading Com-10, DL, Monarch, Yougata 4/6, or Younaga 3

Load the envelope with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.



To prevent DL and Monarch from being wrinkled, they are recommended to be loaded with the print-side facing up, flap opened, and facing you.

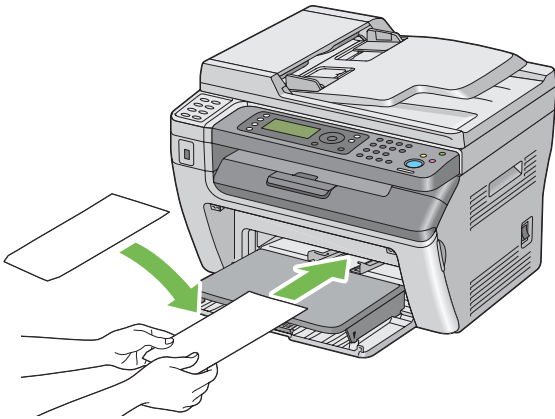


NOTE:

- When you load the envelopes in the long-edge feed (LEF) orientation, be sure to specify the landscape orientation on the print driver.

• When Loading C5, Nagagata 3/4 or Kakugata 3

Load the envelope with the side to be printed on facing up, flap opened, and facing you.

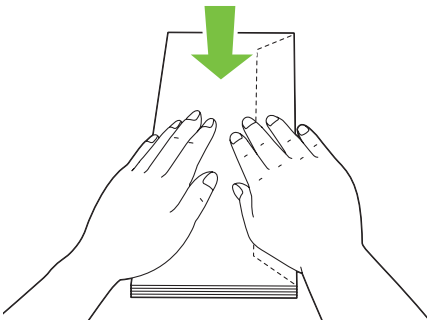


IMPORTANT:

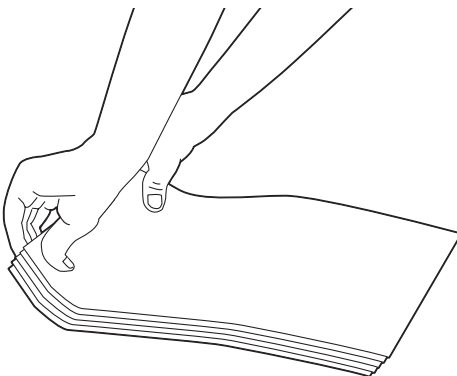
- Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

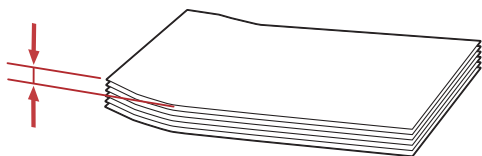
NOTE:

- If you do not load envelopes in the PSI right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the PSI.



- If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration. The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.





- To confirm the correct orientation of each print media such as envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the print driver.

■ Manual Duplex Printing (Windows Print Driver Only)

This section includes:

- ["Operations on Your Computer" on page 164](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 165](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 166](#)

NOTE:

- When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the feeder.

When you start manual duplex printing, the instruction window appears. Note that the window cannot be reopened once it is closed. Do not close the window until duplex printing is complete.

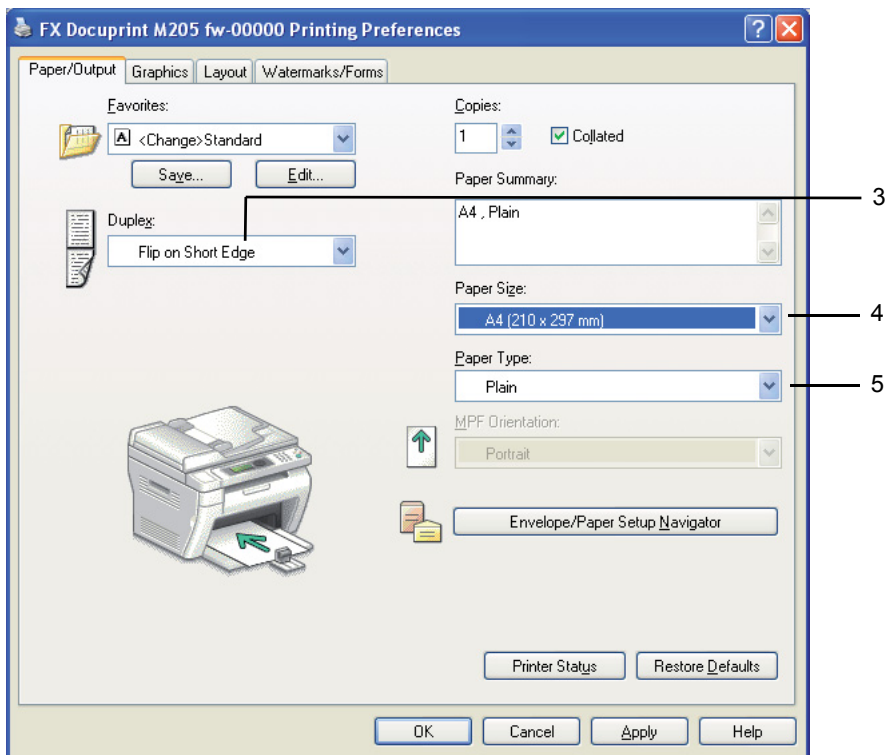
Operations on Your Computer

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® XP WordPad as an example.

NOTE:

- The way to display the printer **Properties/Printing Preferences** dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of your respective application software.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 2 Select the printer from the **Select Printer** list box, and then click **Preferences**.
The **Paper/Output** tab of the **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.
- 3 From **Duplex**, select either **Flip on Short Edge** or **Flip on Long Edge** to define the way 2-sided print pages are bound.



- 4 From **Paper Size**, select the size of the document to be printed.
- 5 From **Paper Type**, select the paper type to be used.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.


IMPORTANT:

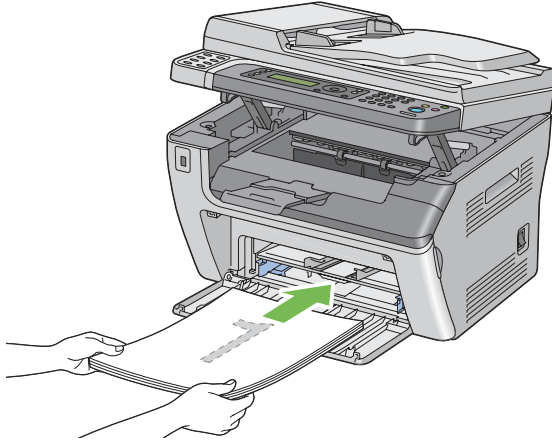
- When you start manual duplex printing, the instruction window appears. Note that the window cannot be reopened once it is closed. Do not close the window until duplex printing is complete.

Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

- 1 First print the even pages (rear sides).

For a six page document, rear sides are printed in the order of page 6, page 4, then page 2.


The  (**Data**) LED blinks and the `Insert Output to Tray` message appears on the LCD panel when the even pages finish printing.

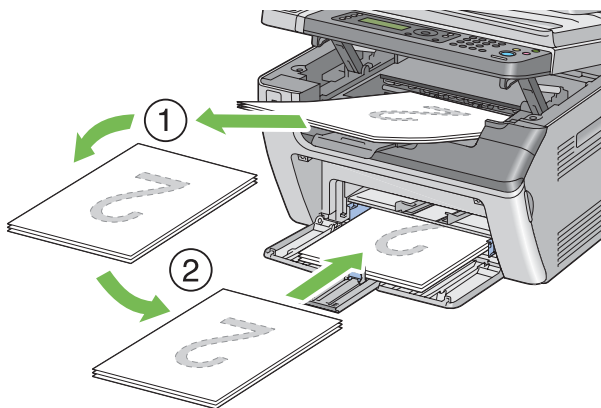


- 2 After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the center output tray.

NOTE:

- Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting them.

- 3 Stack the prints and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up) into the MPF, and then press the  button. Pages are printed in the order of page 1 (rear of page 2), page 3 (rear of page 4), and then page 5 (rear of page 6).




NOTE:

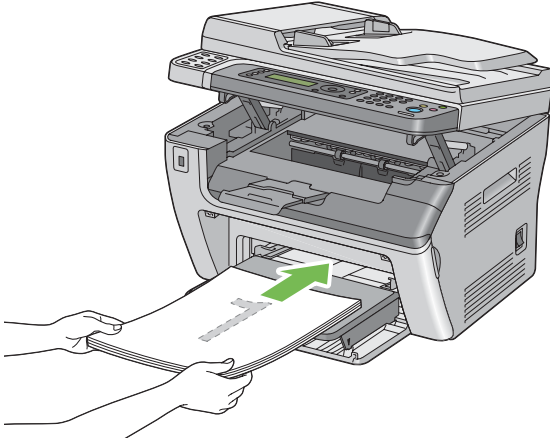
- Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of paper.

Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

- 1 First print the even pages (rear sides).

For a six page document, rear sides are printed in the order of page 6, page 4, then page 2.


The  (**Data**) LED blinks and the `Insert Output to Tray` message appears on the LCD panel when the even pages finish printing.

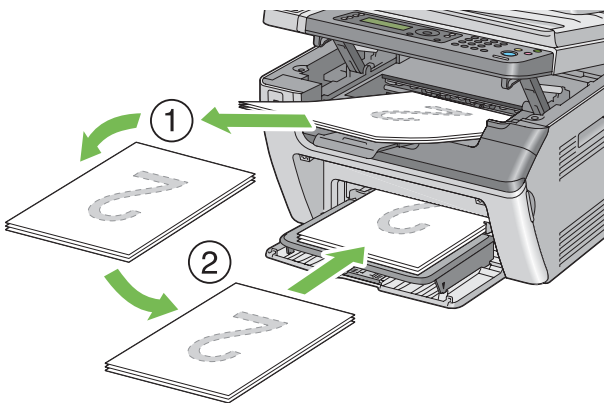


- 2 After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the center output tray.

NOTE:

- Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting them.

- 3 Stack the prints and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up) into the PSI, and then press the  button. Pages are printed in order of page 1 (rear of page 2), page 3 (rear of page 4), and then page 5 (rear of page 6).



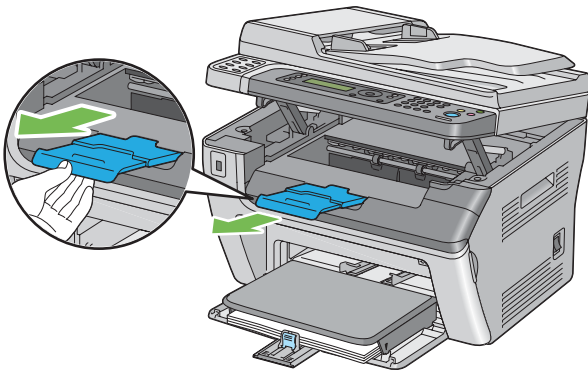
NOTE:

- Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of paper.

■ Using the Output Tray Extension

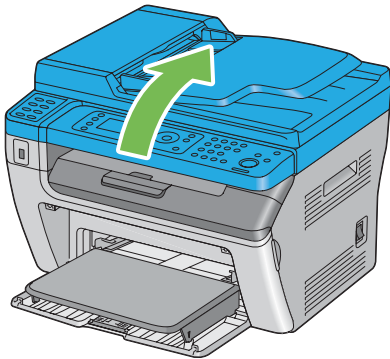
The output tray extension is designed to prevent print media from falling from the printer after the print job is complete.

Before printing a long length document, ensure that the output tray extension is fully extended.



NOTE:

- When you pull out envelopes or small size print media from the center output tray, lift up the scanner.



Setting Paper Sizes and Types

When loading print media, set the paper size and type on the operator panel before printing. This section describes how to set the paper size and type on the operator panel.






See also:

- ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 314](#)

This section includes:

- ["Setting Paper Sizes" on page 169](#)
- ["Setting Paper Types" on page 170](#)






■ Setting Paper Sizes

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Tray Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `MPF`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Paper Size`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the correct paper size for the print media loaded, and then press the  button.

■ Setting Paper Types

IMPORTANT:

- Paper type settings must match those of the actual print media loaded in the tray. Otherwise, print-quality problems can occur.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Tray Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `MPF`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Paper Type`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the correct paper type for the print media loaded, and then press the  button.

Printing

This section covers how to print documents from your printer and how to cancel a job.

This section includes:

- ["Printing from the Computer" on page 172](#)
- ["Canceling a Print Job" on page 173](#)
- ["Selecting Printing Options" on page 174](#)
- ["Printing Custom Size Paper" on page 179](#)
- ["Checking Status of Print Job" on page 181](#)
- ["Printing a Report Page" on page 182](#)
- ["Printer Settings" on page 183](#)

■ Printing from the Computer

Install the print driver to use all the features of the printer. When you choose **Print** from an application, a window representing the print driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the file to print. Print settings selected from the driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or Printer Setting Utility.

Clicking **Properties/Preferences** from the initial **Print** dialog box enables you to change the print settings. If you are not familiar with a feature in the print driver window, open the Help for more information.

The following procedure uses Windows XP WordPad as an example.

To print a job from an application:

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- 2 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the print settings as needed (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
- 4 To adjust print settings not available from the first screen, such as **Paper Size**, **Paper Type**, or **MPF Orientation**, click **Preferences**.
The **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.
- 5 Specify the print settings. For more information, click **Help**.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

■ Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a print job.

This section includes:

- ["Canceling From the Operator Panel" on page 173](#)
- ["Canceling a Job From the Computer \(Windows\)" on page 173](#)

Canceling From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

- 1 Press the  (**Stop**) button.

NOTE:

- Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

Canceling a Job From the Computer (Windows)

• Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the right corner of the taskbar.

- 1 Double-click the printer icon.
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 2 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 3 Press the **Delete** key.
- 4 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

• Canceling a Job From the Desktop

- 1 Minimize all programs to reveal the desktop.
Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).
Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server[®] 2003).
Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).
Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (for Windows Vista[®] and Windows Server 2008).
A list of available printers appears.
- 2 Double-click the printer you selected when you sent the job.
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 3 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 4 Press the **Delete** key.
- 5 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

■ Selecting Printing Options

This section includes:

- ["Selecting Printing Preferences \(Windows\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Selecting Options for an Individual Job \(Windows\)" on page 175](#)
- ["Selecting Options for an Individual Job \(Mac OS X\)" on page 177](#)

Selecting Printing Preferences (Windows)

Printing preferences control all of your print jobs, unless you override them specifically for a job. For example, if you want to use duplex printing for most jobs, set this option in printing preferences.

To select printing preferences:

- 1** Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).
Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server 2003).
Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).
Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).
A list of available printers appears.
- 2** Right-click the icon for your printer, and then select **Printing Preferences**.
The printer's **Printing Preferences** screen appears.
- 3** Make selections on the driver tabs, and then click **OK** to save your selections.

NOTE:

- For more information about Windows print driver options, click **Help** on the print driver tab to view the Help.

Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Windows)

If you want to use special printing options for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer. For example, if you want to use Photo print-quality mode for a particular graphic, select this setting in the driver before printing that job.

- 1 With the desired document or graphic open in your application, access the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select your printer and click **Preferences** to open the print driver.
- 3 Make selections on the driver tabs.

NOTE:

- In Windows, you can save current printing options with a distinctive name and apply them to other print jobs. Make selections on the **Paper/Output**, **Graphics**, **Layout**, or **Watermarks/Forms** tab, and then click **Save** under **Favorites** on the **Paper/Output** tab. Click **Help** for more information.

- 4 Click **OK** to save your selections.
- 5 Print the job.

See the following table for specific printing options:

Printing Options for Windows

Operating System	Driver Tab	Printing Options
Windows XP, Windows XP x 64bit, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x 64bit, Windows Vista, Windows Vista x 64bit, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 x 64bit, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, or Windows 7 x 64bit	Paper/Output tab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Favorites • Duplex • Copies • Collated • Paper Summary • Paper Size • Paper Type • MPF Orientation • Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator • Printer Status • Restore Defaults
	Graphics tab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Image Quality • Toner Saving Mode • Image Enhancement • Screen • Image Settings <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Apply to All Elements – Apply to Selected Element – Brightness – Contrast • Restore Defaults
	Layout tab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Image Orientation • Multiple Up • Image Order • Image Border • Poster/Mixed Document • Output Size • Reduce / Enlarge • Margin Shift/Margin • Restore Defaults
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, or Windows 7	Watermarks/Forms tab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Watermarks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – New Text – New Bitmap – Edit – Delete – First Page Only • Forms <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Off – Create / Register Forms – Image Overlay • Header / Footer Options • Restore Defaults

Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Mac OS X)

To select print settings for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer.

- 1 With the document open in your application, click **File**, and then click **Print**.
- 2 Select your printer from **Printer**.
- 3 Select the desired printing options from the menus and drop-down lists that are displayed.

NOTE:

- In Mac OS® X, click **Save As** on the **Presets** menu screen to save the current printer settings. You can create multiple presets and save each with its own distinctive name and printer settings. To print jobs using specific printer settings, click the applicable saved preset in the **Presets** menu.

- 4 Click **Print** to print the job.

Mac OS X Print Driver Printing Options:

The table shown below uses Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example.

Printing options for Mac OS X

Item	Printing Options
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Copies• Collated• Pages• Paper Size• Orientation
Layout	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Pages per Sheet• Layout Direction• Border• Reverse page orientation• Flip horizontally
Color Matching	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• ColorSync• Vendor Matching• Profile
Paper Handling	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Pages to Print• Page Order• Scale to fit paper size• Destination Paper Size• Scale down only
Cover Page	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print Cover Page• Cover Page Type• Billing Info
Scheduler	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print Document• Priority

Item	Printing Options
Printer Features	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1. Detailed Settings<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Image Quality– Image Rotation 180 Degree– Toner Saving Mode– Barcode Mode– Image Enhancement• 2. Color Balance<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Low Density (K)– Medium Density (K)– High Density (K)• 3. Paper Handling<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Paper Type• 4. Printer Specific Options<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Skip Blank Pages
Supply Levels	
Summary	

■ Printing Custom Size Paper

This section explains how to print on custom size paper using the print driver.

The way to load custom size paper is the same as the one to load standard size paper.

- "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 150
- "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 158
- "Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 168

Defining Custom Paper Sizes

Before printing, set the custom size on the print driver.

NOTE:

- When setting the paper size on the print driver and the operator panel, be sure to specify the same size as the actual print media used. Setting the wrong size for printing can cause printer failure. This is especially true if you configure a bigger size when using a narrow width paper.

• Using the Windows Print Driver

On the Windows print driver, set the custom size in the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box. This section explains the procedure using Windows XP as an example.

For Windows XP or later, an administrator's password only allows users with administrator rights to change the settings. Users without the rights of administrator can only view the contents.

- 1 Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Right-click the icon for your printer, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Select the **Configuration** tab.
- 4 Click **Custom Paper Size**.
- 5 Select the custom setup you want to define from **Details**.
- 6 Specify the length of the short edge and long edge under **Change Setting For**. You can specify the values either by entering them directly or using the up arrow and down arrow buttons. The length of the short edge cannot be longer than the long edge, even if it is within the specified range. The length of the long edge cannot be shorter than the short edge, even if it is within the specified range.
- 7 To assign a paper name, select the **Name the Paper Size** check box, and then enter the name in **Paper Name**. Up to 14 characters can be used for the paper name.
- 8 If necessary, repeat steps 5 to 7 to define another custom size.
- 9 Click **OK** twice.

Printing on Custom Size Paper

Use the following procedures to print using either the Windows or Mac OS X print drivers.

• Using the Windows Print Driver

This section explains the procedure using Windows XP WordPad as an example.

NOTE:

- The way to display the printer **Properties/Printing Preferences** dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of your respective application software.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 2 Select your printer and click **Preferences**.
- 3 Select the **Paper/Output** tab.
- 4 Select the size of the document to be printed from **Paper Size**.
- 5 Select the paper type to be used from **Paper Type**.
- 6 Click the **Layout** tab.
- 7 From **Output Size**, select the custom size you defined. If you have selected the custom size from **Paper Size** in step 4, select **Same as Paper Size**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

• Using the Mac OS X Print Driver

This section explains the procedure using Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Page Setup**.
- 2 Select your printer from **Format For**.
- 3 From **Paper Size**, select **Manage Custom Sizes**.
- 4 In the **Custom Paper Sizes** window, click **+**.
A newly created setting "Untitled" is displayed in the list.
- 5 Double-click "Untitled" and enter a name for the setting.
- 6 Enter the size of the document to be printed in the **Width** and **Height** boxes of **Paper Size**.
- 7 Specify **Non-Printable Area** if necessary.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Make sure that the newly created paper size is chosen in **Paper Size**, and then click **OK**.
- 10 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 11 Click **Print** to start printing.

■ Checking Status of Print Job

This section includes:

- ["Checking Status \(Windows Only\)" on page 181](#)
- ["Checking Status in CentreWare Internet Services \(Windows & Mac OS X\) \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 181](#)

Checking Status (Windows Only)

You can check the printer status with SimpleMonitor. Double-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. The **Printer Selection** window appears, which displays the printer name, printer connection port, printer status, and model name. Check the column **Status** to know the current status of your printer.

Settings button: Displays the **Settings** window and allows you to modify the SimpleMonitor settings.

Click the name of the desired printer listed on the **Printer Selection** window. The **Printer Status** window appears. You can check the printer status and print job status.

For more information about SimpleMonitor, see Help. The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example:

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs**.
- 2 Select **Fuji Xerox**.
- 3 Select **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific**.
- 4 Select your printer.
- 5 Select **SimpleMonitor-Btype for Asia-Pacific**.
The **Printer Selection** window appears.
- 6 Click the name of the desired printer from the list.
The **Printer Status** window appears.
- 7 Click **Help**.

See also:

- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 60](#)

Checking Status in CentreWare Internet Services (Windows & Mac OS X) (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

You can check the status of the print job sent to the printer at the **Jobs** tab of CentreWare Internet Services.

See also:

- ["Printer Management Software" on page 55](#)

■ Printing a Report Page

You can print a various types of reports and lists. For details on each report and list, see "[Report / List](#)" on page 315.

Taking the System Settings page as an example, this section describes two methods of printing a report page.




Printing a System Settings Page

To verify detailed printer settings, print a System Settings page.

The Operator Panel

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
The System Settings page is printed.

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Reports** page is displayed.
- 4 Click **System Settings**.
The System Settings page is printed.

■ Printer Settings

This section includes:

- "Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings" on page 183
- "Using the Printer Setting Utility to Change the Printer Settings" on page 184
- "Adjusting the Language" on page 184

Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings




You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first enter the menus from the operator panel, you see a highlight in the menus. This highlight indicates the factory default menu setting. These settings are the original printer settings.

NOTE:

- Factory defaults may vary for different regions.



To select a new value as a default menu setting:


- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the desired menu, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired menu or menu item, and then press the  button.
 - If the selection is a menu, the menu is opened and the list of menu items appears.
 - If the selection is a menu item, the default menu setting for the menu item is displayed with a highlight.



Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:




- A phrase or word to describe a setting
- A numerical value that can be changed
- An On or Off setting

NOTE:

- Press the  and  button at the same time. This will display the factory default menu settings.

- 4 Select the desired value.
- 5 Press the  button to enable the setting value.

The value is indicated by a highlight in the previous screen to identify it as the current user default menu setting.
- 6 To continue setting other items, select the desired menu. Press the  (**Back**) or  button to return to the previous menu.

To quit setting new values, press the  (**System**) button, and then press the  (**Back**) or  button to return to the `Select Function` screen.

These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

Driver settings may have precedence over changes previously made. In such case, change the defaults of the operator panel.

Using the Printer Setting Utility to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the Printer Setting Utility.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

NOTE:

- Factory defaults may vary for different regions.
These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

To select a new value as a setting:

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

- 3 Select the desired menu item.

Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

- A phrase or word to describe a setting
- A numerical value that can be changed
- An On or Off setting




- 4 Select the desired value, and then click the **Apply New Settings** or **Restart printer to apply new settings** button.

Driver settings may have precedence over changes previously made and may require you to change the Printer Setting Utility defaults.

Adjusting the Language

To display a different language on the operator panel:

• The Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select **Panel Language**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired language, and then press the  button.

• The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **System Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **System Settings** page is displayed.
- 4 Select the desired language from **Panel Language**, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Printing with Web Services on Devices (WSD) (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the new Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows 7 protocol of Microsoft.

This section includes:

- ["Adding Roles of Print Services" on page 187](#)
- ["Printer Setup" on page 188](#)

■ Adding Roles of Print Services

When you use Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 client.

• For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 From the **Action** menu, select **Add Roles**.
- 3 Select the **Print Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Install**.

• For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 From the **Action** menu, select **Add Roles**.
- 3 Select the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Install**.

■ Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the *Software Pack CD-ROM* that shipped with your printer, or using **Add Printer Wizard**.

Installing a Print Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (**Start** → **Devices and Printers** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer Wizard**.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

NOTE:

- In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://IP address/ws/**.
 - If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below. For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.
 - 1 Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
 - 2 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.
 - 3 Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.
 - 4 Enter the printer's IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** text box and click **Next**.
 - Before installing the driver using the **Add Printer** wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the followings:
 - Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
 - Add the print driver to your computer in advance.
- 5 If prompted, install the print driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.
 - 6 Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.
 - 7 Print a test page to verify print installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (**Start** → **Devices and Printers** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).
 - b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Properties** (**Printer properties** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).
 - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Copying

This chapter includes:

- "Loading Paper for Copying" on page 190
- "Preparing a Document" on page 191
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192
- "Making Copies From the ADF (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)" on page 194
- "Setting Copy Options" on page 195
- "Changing the Default Settings" on page 210

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading print documents are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. (The fax feature is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)

See also:

- ["Usable Print Media" on page 144](#)
- ["Loading Print Media" on page 147](#)

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning and sending a fax. (The ADF and fax feature are available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.) You can load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents for one job using the ADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.

IMPORTANT:

- Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 148.0 × 210.0 mm (5.83 × 8.27 inch) or larger than 215.9 × 355.6 mm (8.5 × 14 inch), different sizes or weights together, booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in ADF.
- Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper or torn paper cannot be used in ADF.
- Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in ADF.

NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

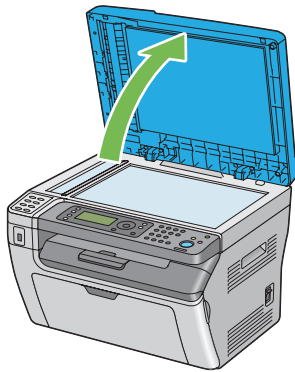
Making Copies From the Document Glass

NOTE:

- A computer connection is not required for copying.
- For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, Ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.
- Contaminants on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy printout. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see "[Cleaning the Scanner](#)" on page 421.

To make a copy from the document glass:

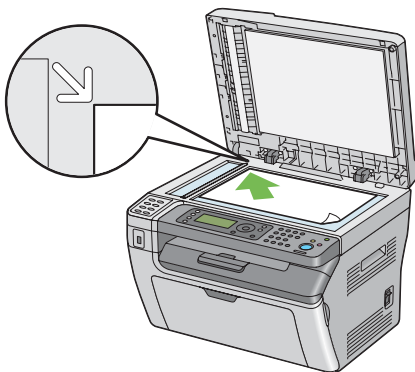
- 1 Open the document cover.



- 2 Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the document glass.

CAUTION:


- Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.



- 3 Close the document cover.

NOTE:


- Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.
- If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper, and then close the document cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 20 mm, start copying with the document cover open.

- 4 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 5 Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

To clear the settings, use the **CA (Clear All)** button.

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.







Making Copies From the ADF (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

IMPORTANT:

- Do not load more than 15 sheets into the ADF or allow more than 15 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 15 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

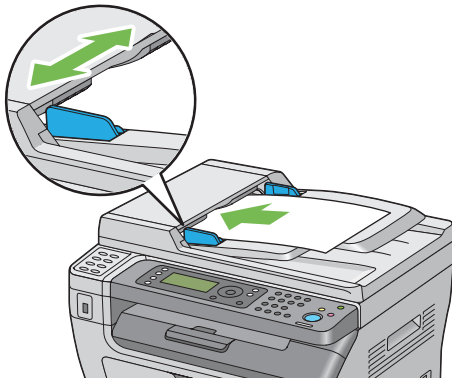
NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.
- A computer connection is not required for copying.
- You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

 Curled originals	 Pre-punched paper
 Lightweight originals	 Folded, creased or torn originals
 Cut and paste originals	 Carbon paper


To make a copy from the ADF:

- 1 Load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents face up on the ADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



NOTE:


- Ensure that you use the document guides before copying a legal-size document.

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)


To clear the settings, use the **CA (Clear All)** button.

- 4 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.



NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing the  (**Start**) button to make copies.

NOTE:

- After a copy job is completed, the copy options would be kept until the screen returns to *Select Function* (auto-reset or the  (**Back**) button is pressed), the **CA (Clear All)** button is pressed, or the  (**Copy**) button is pressed again.

This section includes:

- ["Number of Copies" on page 196](#)
- ["Collated" on page 197](#)
- ["Reduce/Enlarge" on page 198](#)
- ["Document Size" on page 200](#)
- ["Document Type" on page 201](#)
- ["Lighten/Darken" on page 202](#)
- ["Sharpness" on page 203](#)
- ["Auto Exposure" on page 204](#)
- ["Multiple Up" on page 205](#)
- ["Margin Top/Bottom" on page 207](#)
- ["Margin Left/Right" on page 208](#)
- ["Margin Middle" on page 209](#)

■ Number of Copies


You can specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.


See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad.
- 4 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the copy size, and image quality.

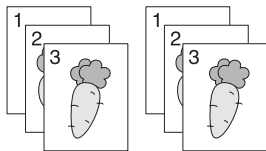
See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Collated

You can sort the copy output. For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will print followed by the second complete document.



NOTE:

- Copying documents with a large amount of data may exhaust available memory. If a memory shortage occurs, cancel the collating by turning **Collated** to **Off** on the operator panel.


- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.


For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.

- 3 Select **Collated**, and then press the  button.

- 4 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default menu settings.

Off*	Does not sort the copy job.
On	Sorts the copy job.
Auto	Automatically determines which output mode for the copy job.

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Reduce/Enlarge

You can reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image, from 25% to 400%.

NOTE:




- When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.
- This item is available only when `Multiple Up` is set to `Off` or `Manual`.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select `Reduce/Enlarge`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired settings, and then press the  button.

• mm series

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

200%
A5→A4 (141%)
A5→B5 (122%)
100%*
B5→A5 (81%)
A4→A5 (70%)
50%

• inch series

200%
Stmt→Lgl (154%)
Stmt→Ltr (129%)
100%*
Lgl→Ltr (78%)
Ldgr→Ltr (64%)
50%

NOTE:

- You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press the ► button to enlarge the zoom ratio or press the ◀ button to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals. See the following table for specific zoom ratios.

Copy	A5	B5	A4
Original			
A5	100%	122%	141%
B5	81%	100%	115%
A4	70%	86%	100%

The methods to load print media vary depending on the size and orientation of the print media. For details, refer to "[Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)](#)" on page 165 or "[Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)](#)" on page 158.

For print media that can be loaded, refer to "[Usable Print Media](#)" on page 144.

- If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, and image quality.

See also:

- "[Setting Copy Options](#)" on page 195

- Press the ◊ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Document Size




You can specify the default document size.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select `Document Size`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default menu settings.

A4 (210 x 297 mm)*

A5 (148 x 210 mm)

B5 (182 x 257 mm)

Letter (8.5 x 11")

Folio (8.5 x 13")

(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)

Legal (8.5 x 14")


(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)

Executive (7.25 x 10.5")

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Document Type




You can select the copy image quality.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select `Document Type`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default menu settings.

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Mixed*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, and copy size.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Lighten/Darken




You can adjust the copy density level to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select **Lighten/Darken**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default menu settings.

Lighter2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Sharpness




You can adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select **Sharpness**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default menu settings.

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Auto Exposure




You can suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.


See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select `Auto Exposure`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `On`, and then press the  button.
- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

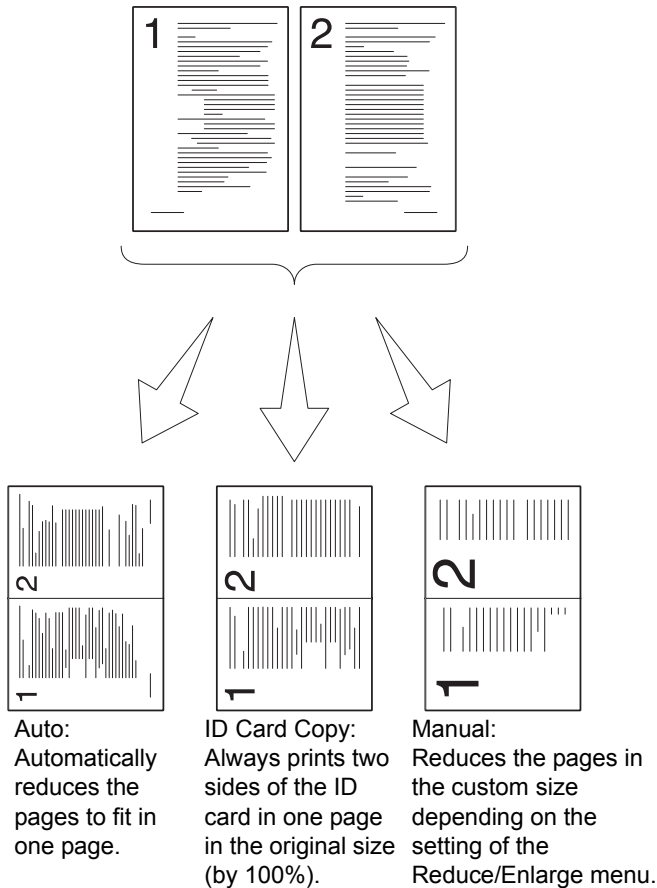
See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Multiple Up




You can print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper.



- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.
For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select **Multiple Up**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default menu settings.


Off*	Does not perform Multiple Up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.


ID Card Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size (only for *Off* or *Manual*), and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

When you are using the document glass and *Multiple Up* is set to *Auto*, *ID Card Copy*, or *Manual*, the display prompts you for another page. Select *Yes* or *No*, and then press the  button.

If you select *Yes*, select *Continue* or *Cancel*, and then press the  button.

■ Margin Top/Bottom






You can specify the top and bottom margins of the copy.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select **Margin Top/Bottom**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

4 mm*/0.2 inch*


Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Margin Left/Right






You can specify the left and right margins of the copy.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select `Margin Left/Right`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

4 mm*/0.2 inch*


Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Margin Middle






You can specify the middle margin of the copy.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Copy**) button.
- 3 Select **Margin Middle**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

0 mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:







- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 195](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Changing the Default Settings

The COPY menu options, including image quality can be set to the most frequently used modes.

To create your own default settings:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Copy Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5, as needed.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

Scanning

This chapter includes:

- ["Scanning Overview" on page 212](#)
- ["Scanning to a USB Connected Computer" on page 213](#)
- ["Using a Scanner on the Network \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only\)" on page 220](#)
- ["Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 244](#)
- ["Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only\)" on page 245](#)
- ["Adjusting Scanning Options" on page 249](#)

Scanning Overview

You can use your printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it into your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100-200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150-300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300-600 dpi

Scanning beyond these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommended in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

Scanning to a USB Connected Computer

This section includes:

- ["Scanning From the Operator Panel" on page 214](#)
- ["Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver" on page 216](#)
- ["Scanning Using the WIA Driver" on page 218](#)

■ Scanning From the Operator Panel

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® XP as an example.

NOTE:




- Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.
- You must use Express Scan Manager on your computer to configure the output destination of the scanned image files.

1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

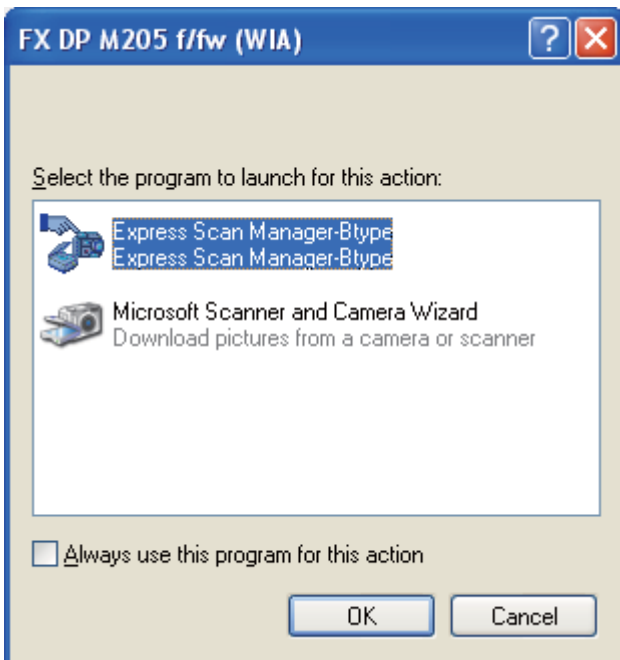
- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Scan**) button.
- 3 Select `Scan to Computer (USB)`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Configure the scanning settings as necessary.
- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button.

The scanned image file is generated.

NOTE:

- If the following dialog box appears on your computer, select **Express Scan Manager-Btype**, and then click **OK**. Once you select the **Always use this program for this action** check box when selecting **Express Scan Manager-Btype**, the selected application is automatically used without displaying the program selection window.



See also:

- ["Express Scan Manager" on page 64](#)

■ Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your printer supports the Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN) driver for scanning images. TWAIN is one of the standard components provided by Windows XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Vista®, Windows 7, and Mac OS® X 10.4/10.5/10.6, and works with various scanners. The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

NOTE:

- Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.
- When using the printer as a network printer, you can also scan document(s) via network protocol instead of the USB cable.

The following procedure to scan an image uses Microsoft Clip Organizer as an example.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

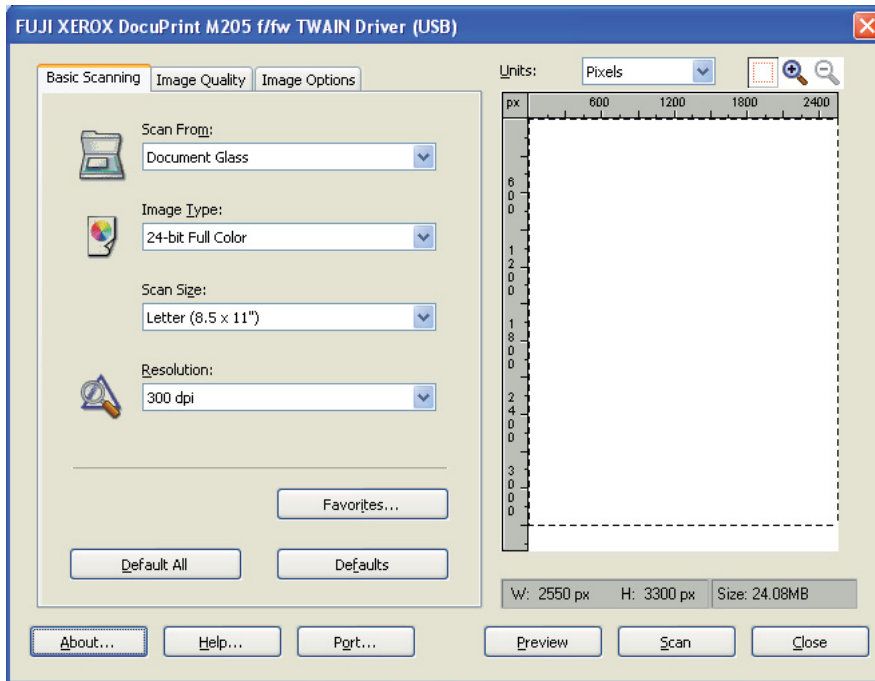
See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Microsoft Office** → **Microsoft Office 2010 Tools** → **Microsoft Clip Organizer**.
- 3 Click **File** → **Add Clips to Organizer** → **From Scanner or Camera**.
- 4 In the **Insert Picture from Scanner or Camera** dialog box, under **Device**, select your TWAIN device.
- 5 Click **Custom Insert**.
- 6 Select your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

NOTE:

- For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, **Preview** is grayed out and disabled when you select **Document Feeder Tray** from **Scan From**.
- The illustration may vary for different operating systems.



- 7 Select the desired properties from the **Image Quality** and **Image Options** tabs.
- 8 Click **Scan** to start scanning.
The scanned image file is generated.

■ Scanning Using the WIA Driver

Your printer also supports the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

NOTE:

- Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.

- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Start the drawing software, such as Paint for Windows.

NOTE:

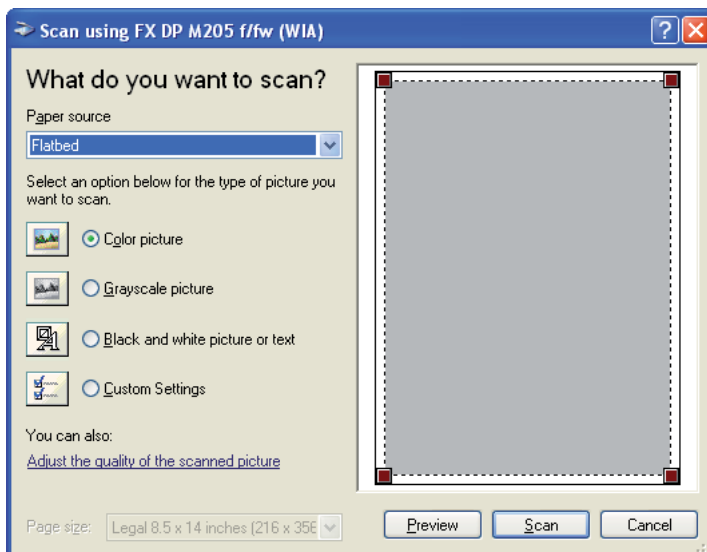
- When you use Windows Vista, use Windows Photo Gallery instead of Paint.

- 3 Click **File** → **From Scanner or Camera** (Paint button → **From scanner or camera** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

The WIA window appears.

NOTE:

- The illustration may vary for different operating systems.



- 4 Select your scanning preferences and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** dialog box.

- 5 Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.

- 6 Click **Scan** to start scanning.
- 7 Click **Save As** from the **File** menu.
- 8 Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.

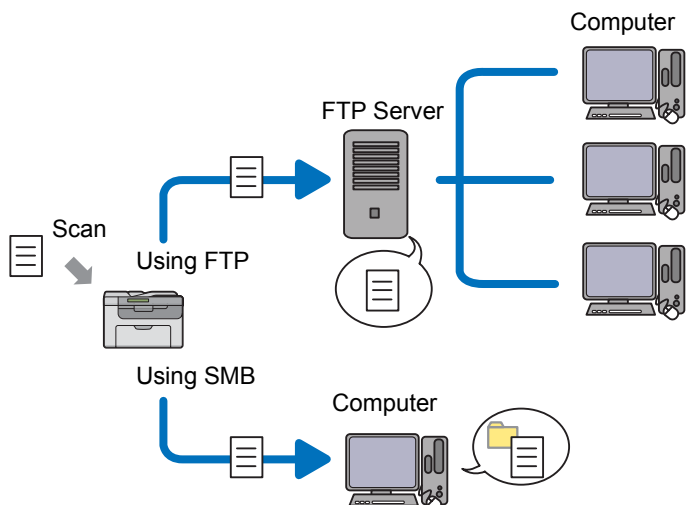
Using a Scanner on the Network (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)

This section includes:

- ["Overview" on page 221](#)
- ["Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 223](#)
- ["Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 225](#)
- ["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 236](#)
- ["Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 243](#)

■ Overview

The Scan to Server/Computer feature allows you to scan documents and send the scanned document to a network computer via the FTP or SMB protocol.



You can select the kind of the server and specify a destination to store the scanned document with the CentreWare Internet Services or Address Book Editor.

The following items are required to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

- Using SMB

To transfer data via SMB, your computer must run on one of the following operating systems that includes folder sharing.

For Mac OS X, a shared user account is required on the Mac OS X.

- Windows Server 2003
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows XP
- Windows Vista
- Windows 7
- Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

- Using FTP

To transfer data via FTP, one of the following FTP servers and an account to the FTP server (login name and password) are required.

- Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Vista, or Windows 7
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0
- Windows XP
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Server 3.0/4.0 or Internet Information Services 5.0/5.1
- Mac OS X
FTP service of Mac OS X 10.4.2/10.4.4/10.4.8/10.4.9/10.4.10/10.4.11/10.5/10.6

For information on how to configure the FTP service, contact your system administrator.

Follow the procedure below to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

["Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 223](#)



["Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 225](#)



["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 236](#)

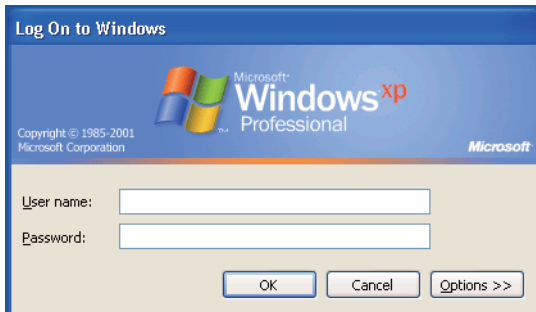


["Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 243](#)

■ Confirming a Login name and Password

When Using SMB

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.



If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password for your user login account with the following procedure.

• For Windows XP:

- 1 Click **start** → **Control Panel** → **User Accounts**.
- 2 Click **Change an account**.
- 3 Select your account.
- 4 Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

• For Windows Server 2003:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Computer Management**.
- 2 Click **Local Users and Groups**.
- 3 Double-click **Users**.
- 4 Right-click your account, and then select **Set Password**.

NOTE:

- When an alert message appears, confirm the message and then click **Proceed**.

- 5 Add in a password for your user login account.

• For Windows Vista and Windows 7:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Click **User Accounts and Family Safety**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2:**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Click **User Accounts**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6**

- 1 Click **System Preferences** → **Accounts**.
- 2 Select your account.
- 3 Select **Change Password**.
- 4 Enter a password for your user login account in **New Password** (**New password** for Mac OS X 10.6).
- 5 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.
- 6 Click **Change Password**.

After you confirmed a login user name and password, go to "[Specifying a Destination to Store the Document](#)" on [page 225](#).

When Using FTP

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user name and a password. For your user name and password, contact your system administrator.

■ Specifying a Destination to Store the Document

When Using SMB

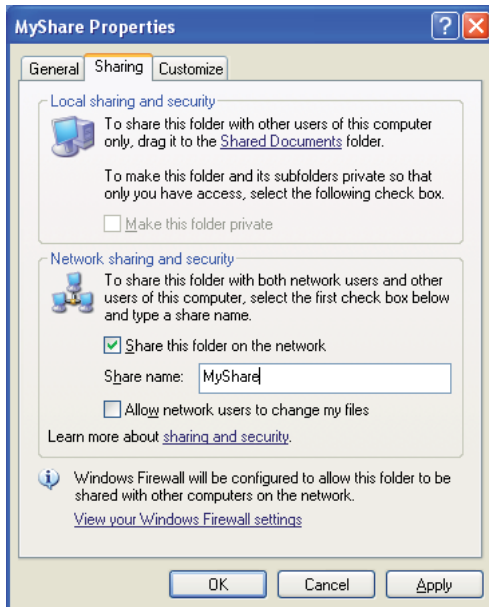
Share a folder to store the scanned document using the following procedure.

• For Windows XP Home Edition:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder on the network**.
- 4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

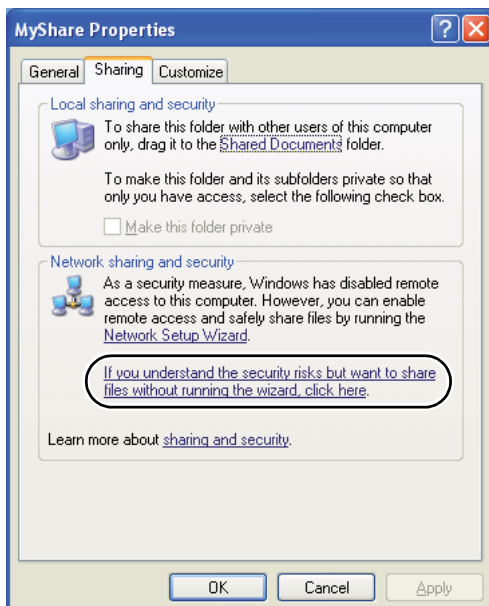
NOTE:

- Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



NOTE:

- When the following screen appears, click **If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here**, then select **Just enable file sharing**, and then click **OK**.





5 Select **Allow network users to change my files**.

6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

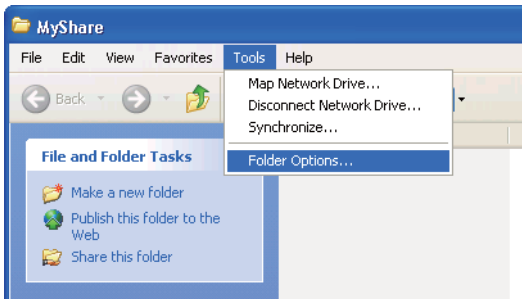
NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name, **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory

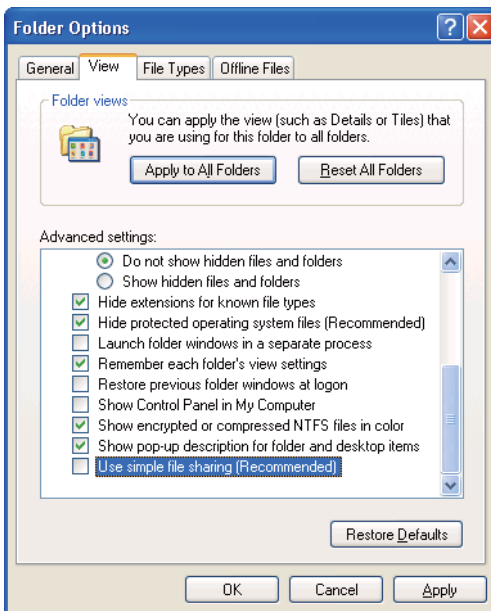
After you created a folder, go to "[Configuring the Printer Settings](#)" on page 236.

• For Windows XP Professional Edition:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**) and double-click the folder.
- 2 Select **Folder Options** from **Tools**.



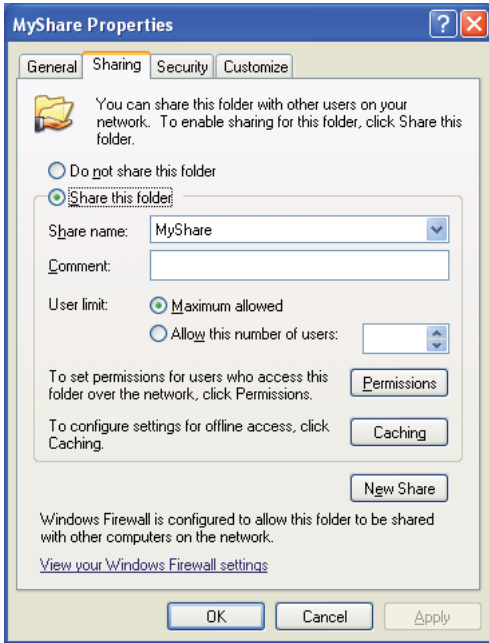
- 3 Click **View** tab, and then deselect the **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)** check box.



- 4 Click **OK**, and then close the window.
- 5 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 6 Select the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.
- 7 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE:

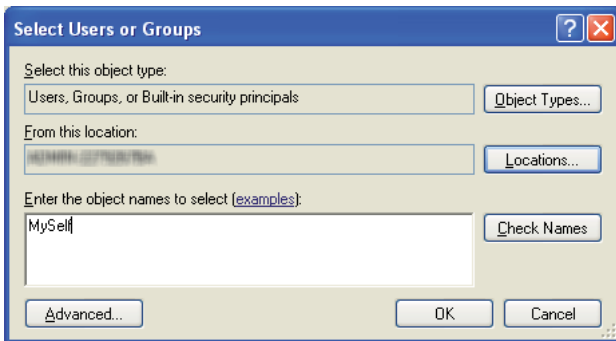
- Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



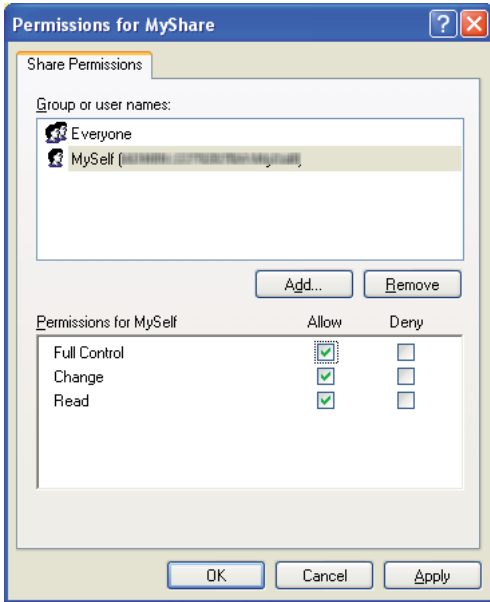
- 8 Click **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.
- 9 Click **Add**.
- 10 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 11 Click **OK**.
- 12 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.



13 Click **OK**.

14 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

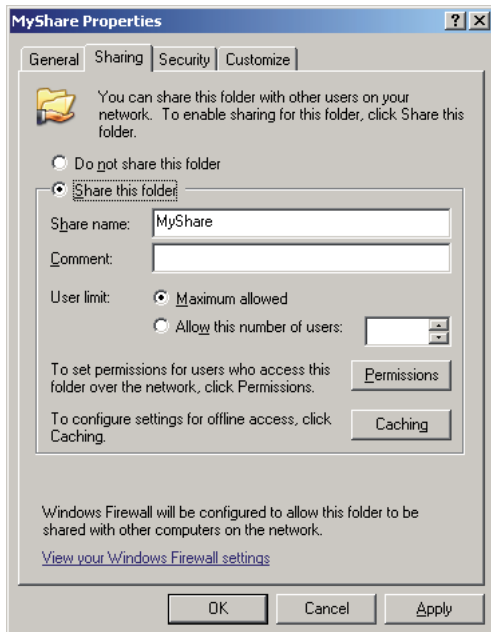
After you created a folder, go to ["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 236](#).

• For Windows Server 2003

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select the **Share this folder**.
- 4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE:

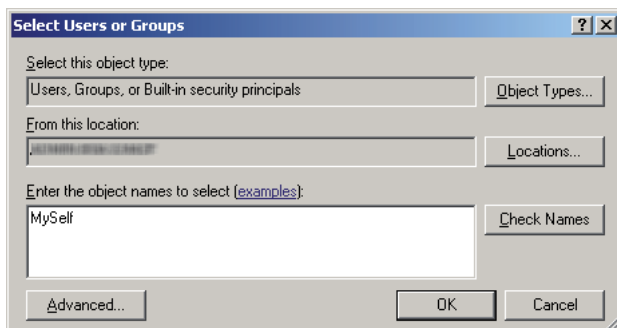
- Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.



- 5 Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.
- 6 Click **Add**.
- 7 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

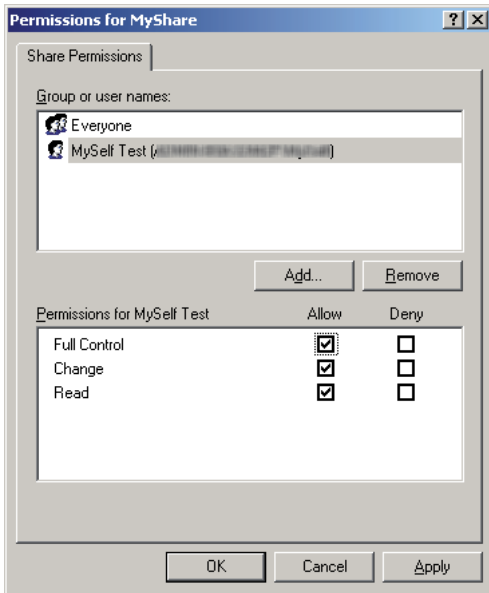
NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



8 Click **OK**.

9 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.



10 Click **OK**.

11 Configure other settings as necessary, and then click **Apply** and click **OK**.

NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to "[Configuring the Printer Settings](#)" on page 236.

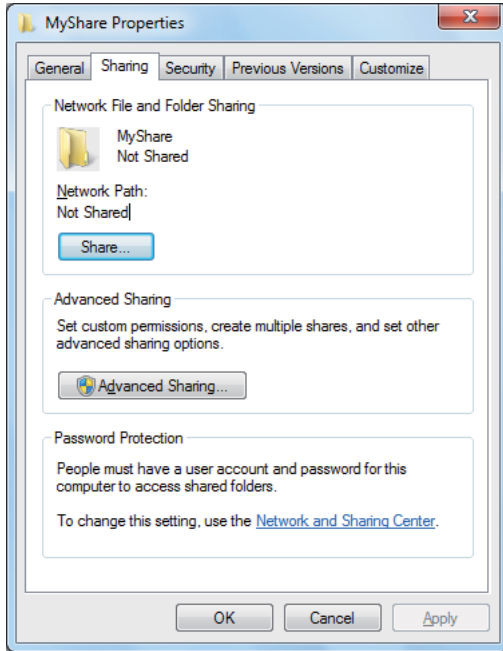
- **For Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2**

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.

For Windows Vista, when **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

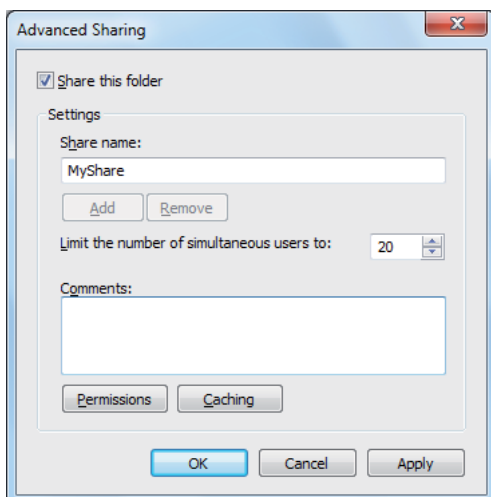


4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.

5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE:

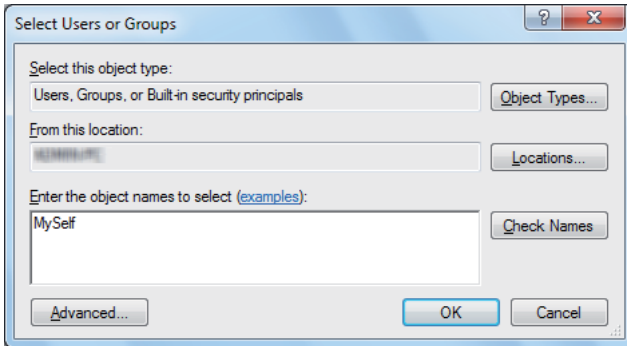
- Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.



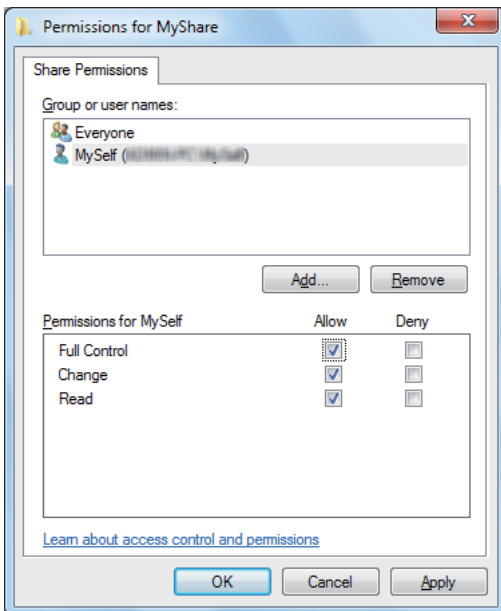
- 6 Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.
- 7 Click **Add**.
- 8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 9 Click **OK**.
- 10 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.



- 11 Click **OK**.
- 12 Click **OK** to exit the **Advanced Sharing** dialog box.
- 13 Click **Close**.

NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**

You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.
After you created a folder, go to "[Configuring the Printer Settings](#)" on page 236.

• For Mac OS X 10.4:

- 1 Select **Home** from the **Go** menu.
- 2 Double-click **Public**.
- 3 Create a folder (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).
NOTE:
 - Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.
- 4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.
- 5 Select the **Personal File Sharing** check box and the **Windows Sharing** check box.

• For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).
NOTE:
 - Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.
- 2 Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.
- 3 Select the **Shared Folder (Shared folder for Mac OS X 10.6)** check box.
- 4 Open **Sharing & Permissions**.
- 5 Click the plus (+) sign.
- 6 Specify an account you want to share, and then click **Select**.
- 7 Set the **Privilege** of the account to **Read & Write**.
- 8 Repeat steps 5 to 7 as needed, and then close the window.
- 9 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.
- 10 Select the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.
- 11 Select the **Share files and folders using SMB (Share files and folders using SMB (Windows))** for Mac OS X 10.6) check box and your account name.
- 12 Enter your account password, and then click **OK**.
- 13 Click **Done**.

When Using FTP

For a destination to store the document, contact your system administrator.

■ Configuring the Printer Settings

You can configure the printer settings to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature with the CentreWare Internet Services or Address Book Editor.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

From the CentreWare Internet Services

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The printer's web page appears.

NOTE:

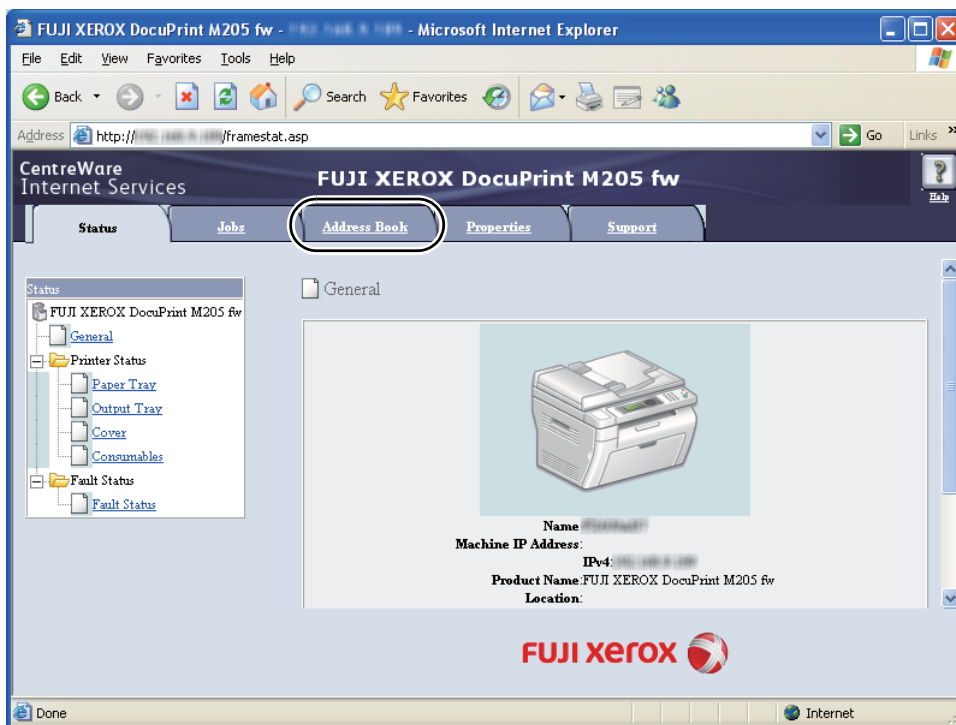
- For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "[Verifying the IP Settings](#)" on page 80.

- 3 Click the **Address Book** tab.

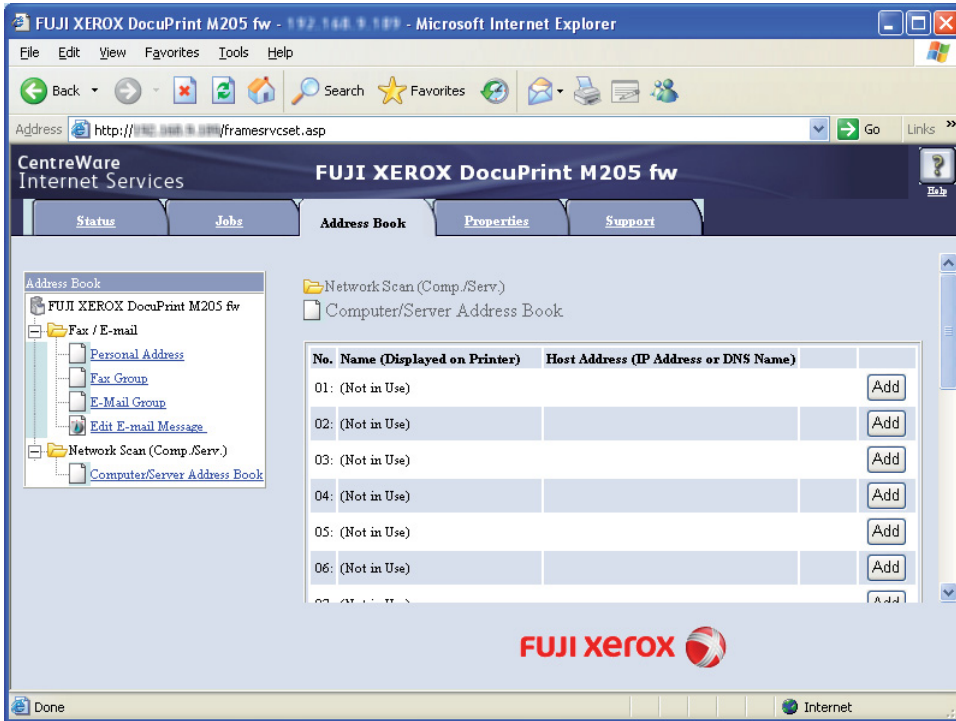
If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

NOTE:

- The default User ID and password are **11111** and **x-admin** respectively.



- 4 Under **Network Scan (Comp./Serv.)**, click **Computer/Server Address Book**.
- 5 Select any unused number and click **Add**.

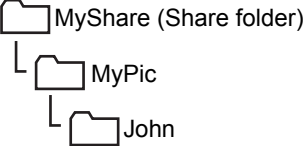


The **Add Network Scan Address** page appears.

No.	01
1— Name (Displayed on Printer)	<input type="text"/>
2— Network Type	* Sever FTP <input type="button" value="v"/>
3— Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name)	<input type="text"/>
4— Port Number	<input type="text"/> FTP(21, 5000 - 65535), SMB(139, 5000 - 65535)
5— Login Name (if required by host)	<input type="text"/>
6— Login Password	<input type="password"/>
7— Re-enter Password	<input type="password"/>
8— Name of Shared Directory	<input type="text"/> e.g. SMB(Share, Sharedfolder)
9— Subdirectory Path (optional)	<input type="text"/>

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	Name (Displayed on Printer)	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Address Book.
2	Network Type	Select Server FTP if you use a FTP server. Select Computer SMB if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer.

3	Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name)	<p>Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out.</p> <p>The following are examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Server FTP: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100 • For Computer SMB: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100
4	Port Number	<p>Enter the server port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 21 for FTP and 139 for SMB.</p>
5	Login Name (if required by host)	<p>Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.</p>
6	Login Password	<p>Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 223 for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)
7	Re-enter Password	<p>Re-enter your password.</p>
8	Name of Shared Directory	<p>For Computer SMB only.</p> <p>On the Windows operating system, enter the share name of the folder to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.</p> <p>On the Mac OS, enter the folder name to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.</p>
9	Subdirectory Path (optional)	<p>For Computer SMB</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.</p> <p>Example: Share Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John</p> <p>You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.</p>  <pre> graph TD A[MyShare (Share folder)] --> B[MyPic] B --> C[John] </pre> <p>In this case, enter the following item.</p> <p>Server Path: MyPic\John</p> <p>For Server FTP</p> <p>Enter the server path to store the scanned document.</p>

After you configured settings, go to "[Sending the Scanned File to the Network](#)" on page 243.

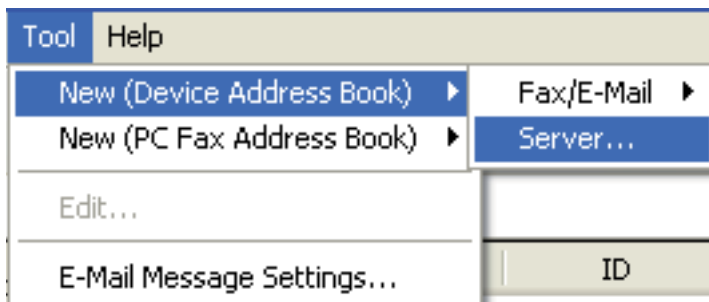
From the Address Book Editor

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Address Book Editor**.

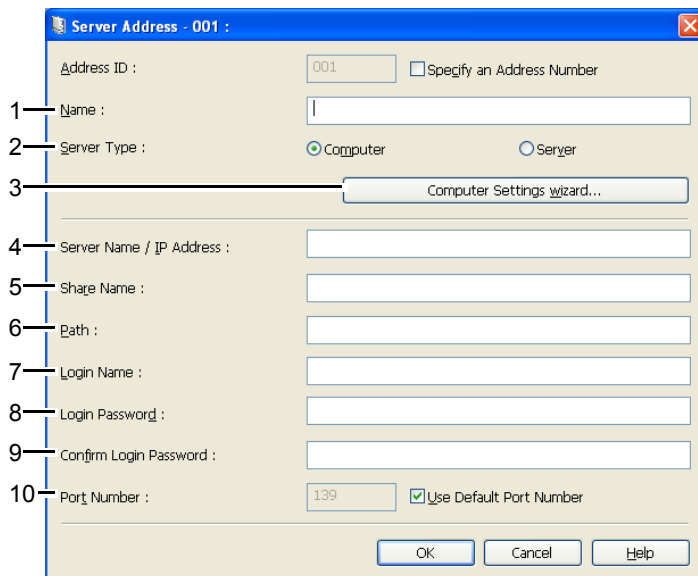
NOTE:

- The window to select a device appears when multiple fax drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Device Name**.
- The **Enter Password** window appears when **Panel Lock Set** is set to **Enable**. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK**.

- 2 Click **OK** on the "Retrieval Successful" message window.
- 3 Click **Tool** → **New (Device Address Book)** → **Server**.

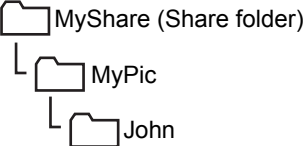


The **Server Address** dialog box appears.



To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Address Book.
2	Server Type	Select Computer if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer. Select Server if you use a FTP server.

3	Computer Settings wizard	<p>For Computer only.</p> <p>Clicking this button opens the wizard screen which guides you through several steps.</p> <p>When you complete the steps in the wizard, the settings for Server Address are automatically configured. For details, click the Help button.</p>
4	Server Name / IP Address	<p>Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out.</p> <p>The following are examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Computer: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100 • For Server: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100
5	Share Name	<p>For Computer only.</p> <p>Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer.</p>
6	Path	<p>For Computer</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.</p> <p>Example: Share Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John</p> <p>You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.</p>  <pre> graph TD A[MyShare (Share folder)] --> B[MyPic] B --> C[John] </pre> <p>In this case, enter the following item.</p> <p>Path: MyPic\John</p> <p>For Server</p> <p>Enter the path to store the scanned document.</p>
7	Login Name	<p>Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.</p>
8	Login Password	<p>Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Server/Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 223 for details on how to add a password in your user login account).
9	Confirm Login Password	<p>Re-enter your password.</p>
10	Port Number	<p>Enter the port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.</p>







After you configured settings, go to ["Sending the Scanned File to the Network"](#) on page 243.

■ Sending the Scanned File to the Network

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Press the  (**Scan**) button.
- 3 Select `Scan to Network`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Scan to`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Computer (Net)` or `Server (FTP)`, or `Search Address Book`, and then press the  button.
`Computer (Net)`: Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB protocol.
`Server (FTP)`: Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP protocol.
`Search Address Book`: Select the server address registered in Address Book.
- 6 Select the destination to store the scanned file in, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select scanning options as required.
- 8 Press the  (**Start**) button to send the scanned files.

Scanning to a USB Storage Device

The Scan to USB Memory feature allows you to scan documents and save the scanned data to a USB storage device. To scan documents and save them, follow the steps below:

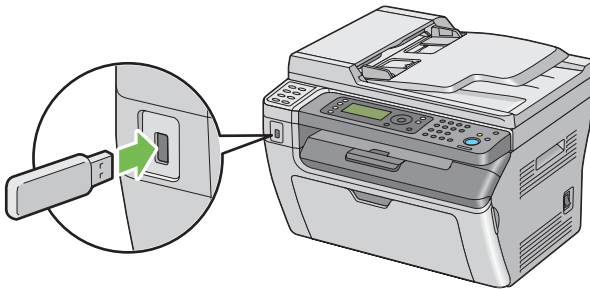
- 1 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)

- 2 Insert the USB storage device into the USB drive on your printer.



USB Memory appears.

- 3 Select `Scan to`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select `Save to USB Drive` or a folder to save file, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select scanning options as required.
- 6 Press the **Start** button.

When the scan is complete, the display prompts you for another page. Select `No` or `Yes`, and then press the **OK** button.

If you select `Yes`, select `Continue` or `Cancel`, and then press the **OK** button.

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)

To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your printer, follow the steps below:

- Setup the E-mail Address Book through the CentreWare Internet Services. See "[Setting a Fax/E-mail Address Book](#)" on [page 246](#) for more details.

■ Setting a Fax/E-mail Address Book

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The printer's web page appears.

NOTE:

- For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "[Verifying the IP Settings](#)" on page 80.

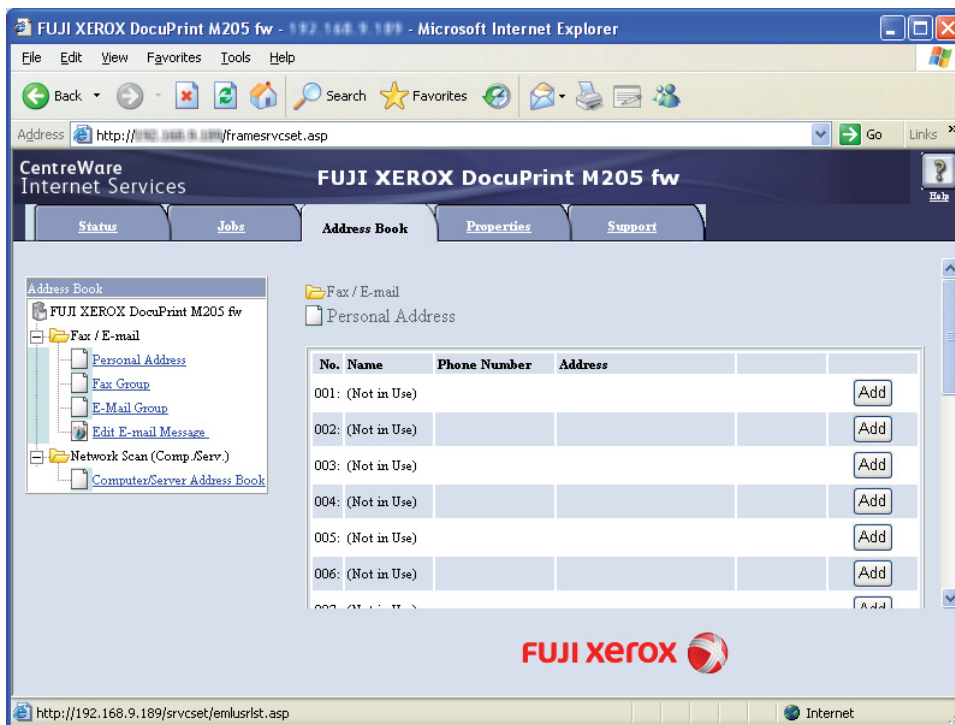
- 3 Click the **Address Book** tab.

If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

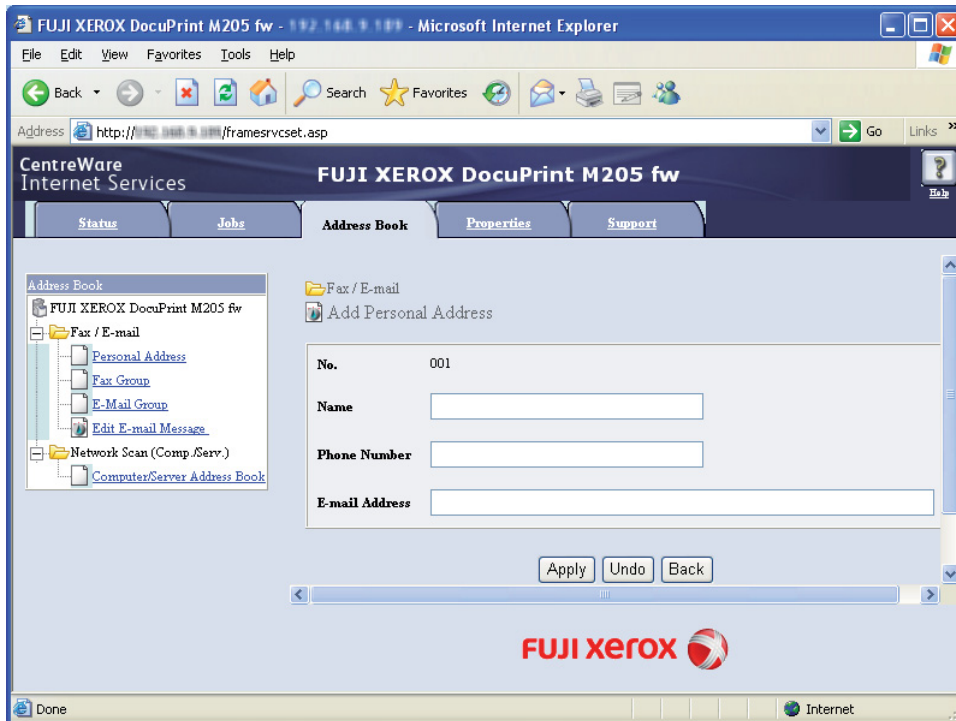
NOTE:

- The default User ID and password are **11111** and **x-admin** respectively.

- 4 Under **Fax / E-mail**, click **Personal Address**.



- 5 Select any unused number and click **Add**.



The **Add Personal Address** page appears.

- 6 Enter a name, phone number and e-mail address in the **Name**, **Phone Number** and **E-mail Address** fields.
- 7 Click the **Apply** button.

■ Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

NOTE:


- To use the Scan to E-mail function, you first need to set up your SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) server information. SMTP is a protocol for sending e-mail. For details, refer to the Setup Guide.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 194](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 192](#)


- 2 Press the  (**Scan**) button.


- 3 Select `Scan to E-Mail`, and then press the  button.



- 4 Select `E-Mail to`, and then press the  button.

- 5 Select the setting listed below, and then press the  button.

`Keypad`: Enter the e-mail address directly and then press the  button.

`Address Book`: Select the e-mail address registered in the E-mail Address Book, and then press the  button.

`E-Mail Group`: Select the e-mail group registered in the E-mail Groups, and then press the  button.

`Search Address Book`: Enter a text to search from the E-mail Address Book, and then press the  button. Select the e-mail address from the list, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Users need to be registered before you can select `Address Book` on the operator panel.

- 6 Select scanning options as required.

- 7 Press the  (**Start**) button to send e-mail.

Adjusting Scanning Options

This section includes:

- ["Adjusting the Default Scan Settings" on page 250](#)
- ["Changing the Scan Settings for an Individual Job" on page 252](#)

■ Adjusting the Default Scan Settings






This section includes:

- "Setting the Scanned Image File Type" on page 250
- "Setting the Color Mode" on page 250
- "Setting the Scan Resolution" on page 251
- "Setting the Document Size" on page 251
- "Automatically Suppressing Background Variations" on page 251

For a complete list of all of the defaults settings, see "Defaults Settings" on page 339.

Setting the Scanned Image File Type

To specify the file type of the scanned image:






- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `File Format`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the type, and then press the  button.

Available types:

- PDF (factory default)
- TIFF
- JPEG

Setting the Color Mode






You can scan an image in color or in black and white. Selecting black and white significantly reduces the file size of the scanned images. An image scanned in color will have a larger file size than the same image scanned in black and white.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Color`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select one of the following options, and then press the  button.
 - `Black & White`: Scans in black and white mode. This is available only when `File Format` is set to PDF or TIFF.
 - `Grayscale`: Scans in grayscale mode.
 - `Color`: Scans in color mode. (factory default)
 - `Color (Photo)`: Scans in color mode. This is suitable for photographic images.

Setting the Scan Resolution






You may want to change the scan resolution depending on the way you plan to use the scanned image. Scan resolution affects both the size and image quality of the scanned image file. The higher the scan resolution, the larger the file size.

To select the scan resolution:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Resolution`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select one of the following options, and then press the  button:
 - `200 × 200dpi`: Produces the lowest resolution and smallest file size. (factory default)
 - `300 × 300dpi`: Produces medium resolution and a medium file size.
 - `400 × 400dpi`: Produces high resolution and a large file size.
 - `600 × 600dpi`: Produces the highest resolution and largest file size.

Setting the Document Size






To specify the size of the original:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Document Size`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select a specific paper size to determine the area to be scanned, and then press the  button.
The factory default setting is `A4 (210 × 297mm)`.

Automatically Suppressing Background Variations

When scanning documents with a dark background such as newspapers, the printer automatically can detect the background and whiten it when outputting the image.

To turn on/off automatic suppression:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Auto Exposure`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select either `On` or `Off`, and then press the  button.
The factory default setting is `On`.

■ Changing the Scan Settings for an Individual Job

Scanning to a Computer

To temporarily change a scan setting when scanning to a computer:

- 1 Press the **⏪ (Scan)** button.
- 2 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, select the scan destination, and then press the **OK** button.
For the DocuPrint M205 b, select *Scan to Computer (USB)*, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select the desired menu item, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Repeat steps 3 and 4, as needed.
- 6 Press the **▶ (Start)** button to begin the scan.

Emailing the Scanned Image (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)

To temporarily change a scan setting when emailing the scanned image:

- 1 Press the **⏪ (Scan)** button.
- 2 Select *Scan to E-Mail*, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select the e-mail destination, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select the desired menu item, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the **OK** button.
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5, as needed.
- 7 Press the **▶ (Start)** button to begin the scan.

Faxing (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

This chapter includes:

- ["Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254](#)
- ["Configuring Fax Initial Settings" on page 256](#)
- ["Sending a Fax" on page 261](#)
- ["Sending a Delayed Fax" on page 272](#)
- ["Sending a Fax from the Driver \(Direct Fax\)" on page 273](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax" on page 279](#)
- ["Automatic Dialing" on page 289](#)
- ["Other Ways to Fax" on page 298](#)
- ["Setting Sounds" on page 302](#)
- ["Specifying the Fax Settings" on page 305](#)
- ["Changing Setting Options" on page 310](#)
- ["Printing a Report" on page 311](#)

Connecting the Telephone Line

IMPORTANT:

- Warnings in PTC200
General warning

"The grant of a Telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of Telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services."

Warnings taken from Specification text.

4.5.1 Off-hook line impedance

(4)

"This equipment does not fully meet Telecom's impedance requirements. Performance limitations may occur when used in conjunction with some parts of the network. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances."

4.9.3 Non-voice equipment

"This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances."

5.6.1

(3)

"This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom '111' Emergency Service."

5.5.5

(4)

"If a charge for local calls is unacceptable, the 'Dial' button should NOT be used for local calls. Only the 7-digits of the local number should be dialled from your telephone. DO NOT dial the area code digit or the '0' prefix."

8.1.7

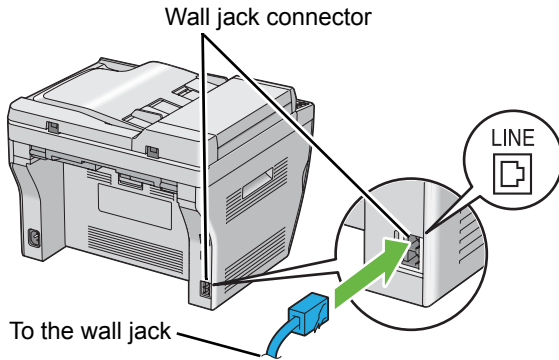
(b)

"This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom '111' Emergency Service."

NOTE:


- Do not connect your printer directly to a DSL (digital subscriber line). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

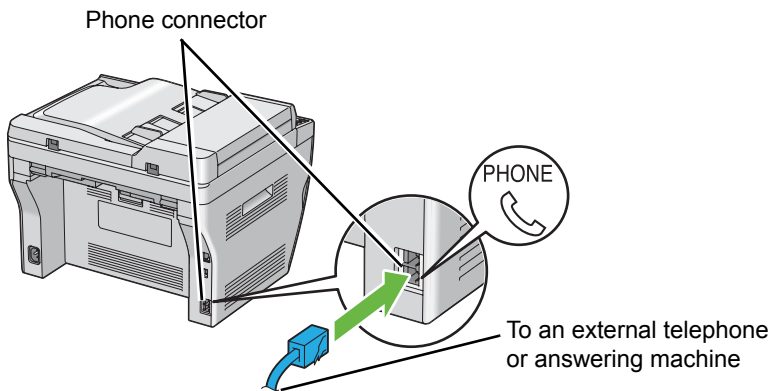
- 1 Plug one end of a telephone line cord to the wall jack connector and the other end to an active wall jack.



NOTE:

- Use the telephone line cord which has four contacts. The cord included with your printer has four contacts. It is recommended that you plug the cord to the wall jack which also has four contacts.

- 2 To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, plug the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector ().









Configuring Fax Initial Settings

This section includes:

- ["Setting Your Region" on page 257](#)
- ["Setting the Printer ID" on page 258](#)
- ["Setting the Time and Date" on page 259](#)
- ["Changing the Clock Mode" on page 260](#)

■ Setting Your Region

You need to set the region where your printer is used for using the fax service on the printer.





- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Fax Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Region`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the region where the printer is used, and then press the  button.
- 6 Ensure that `Restart System` is displayed, select `Yes`, and then press the  button.
The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

NOTE:

- When you configure the region setting, the information, which is registered to the device, is initialized.





■ Setting the Printer ID

You may be required to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Fax Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Your Fax Number`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Enter your fax number using the numeric keypad.

NOTE:






- If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the **C (Clear)** button to delete the last digit.

- 6 Press the  button when the number on the LCD panel is correct.
- 7 Select `Company Name`, and then press the  button.
- 8 Enter your name or company name using the numeric keypad.
You can enter alphanumeric characters using the numeric keypad, including special symbols by pressing the 1, *, and # buttons.
For details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see "[Using the Numeric Keypad](#)" on page 358.
- 9 Press the  button when the name on the LCD panel is correct.
- 10 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.






■ Setting the Time and Date

NOTE:

- It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.








- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Clock Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Set Date`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Enter the correct date using the numeric keypad, or select the correct date.

NOTE:

- If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the  button to re-enter the digit.
- 7 Press the  button when the date on the LCD panel is correct.
 - 8 Select `Set Time`, and then press the  button.
 - 9 Enter the correct time using the numeric keypad, or select the correct time.
 - 10 Press the  button when the time on the LCD panel is correct.
 - 11 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

■ Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Clock Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Time Format`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select the desired format, and then press the  button.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

Sending a Fax

You can fax data from your printer.

This section includes:

- ["Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 262](#)
- ["Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 263](#)
- ["Resolution" on page 264](#)
- ["Document Type" on page 265](#)
- ["Lighten/Darken" on page 266](#)
- ["Inserting a Pause" on page 267](#)
- ["Sending a Fax Automatically" on page 268](#)
- ["Sending a Fax Manually" on page 269](#)
- ["Confirming Transmissions" on page 270](#)
- ["Automatic Redialing" on page 271](#)







■ Loading an Original Document on the ADF

IMPORTANT:

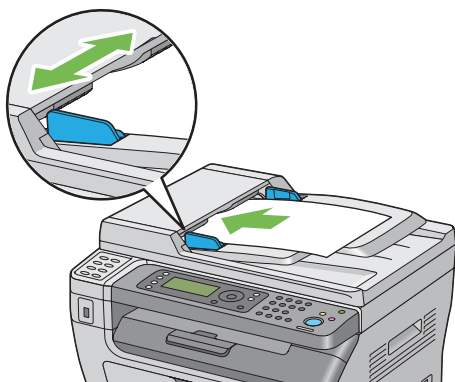
- Do not load more than 15 sheets into the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) or allow more than 15 sheets to be fed to the Document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 15 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.
- You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

 Curled originals	 Pre-punched paper
 Lightweight originals	 Folded, creased or torn originals
 Cut and paste originals	 Carbon paper

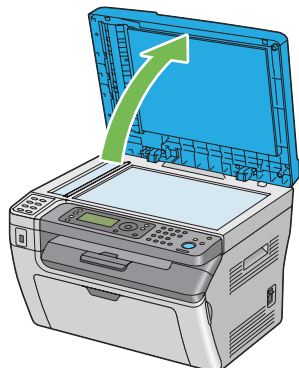
- 1 Place the document(s) face up on the ADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



- 2 Adjust the document resolution, referring to "[Resolution](#)" on page 264.

■ Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass

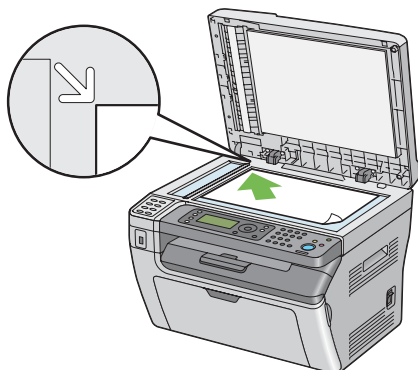
- 1 Open the document cover.



- 2 Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the document glass.

CAUTION:

- Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.






- 3 Adjust the document resolution, referring to "[Resolution](#)" on page 264.
- 4 Close the document cover.

NOTE:

- Ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.
- If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the document cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 20 mm, start faxing with the document cover open.

■ Resolution

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission:

- 1 Press the  (**Fax**) button.
- 2 Select **Resolution**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.




Standard *	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The <i>Super Fine</i> mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE:

- Faxes scanned in the *Super Fine* mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

■ Document Type

To select the default document type for the current fax job:

- 1 Press the  (**Fax**) button.
- 2 Select `Document Type`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.




NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Text *	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

■ Lighten/Darken

To adjust the contrast to make the fax lighter or darker than the original:


- 1 Press the  (**Fax**) button.
- 2 Select **Lighten/Darken**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Lighter2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal *	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

■ Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the  (Redial/Pause) button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the LCD panel to indicate when a pause is entered.

■ Sending a Fax Automatically

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 262
- "Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 263








- 2 Press the  (**Fax**) button.








- 3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.





See also:

- "Resolution" on page 264
- "Lighten/Darken" on page 266

- 4 You can select a fax number in one of the following ways:

- Select **Fax to**, and then press the  button. Select **Keypad**, and then press the  button. Enter the fax number of the remote fax machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
- Press the **One-touch** button, and then press the  button.
- Press the  (**Address Book**) button, select **All Entries**, **Group Dial**, or **Search** using the  button, and then press the  button.


All Entries	Displays a list of registered fax numbers. Press the  button to select the recipients, and then press the  button.
Group Dial	Press the  button to select the recipients, and then press the  button.
Search	Searches a fax number from the Address Book. Enter the text you want to search, and then press the  button. Press the  button to select the recipients, and then press the  button.


- Press the  (**Redial/Pause**) button to redial, and then press the  button.
- Press the  (**Speed Dial**) button. Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Before you use the One-touch button, you need to register a number for any speed dial from 01 to 08. For more information on how to store the number, see "Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 291.

- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select **Yes** or **No**, and then press the  button.

If you select **Yes**, place the next page on the document glass, select **Continue** and then press the  button.

- 6 The number is dialed and then the printer begins sending the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

■ Sending a Fax Manually

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See also:


- "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 262
- "Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 263

- 2 Press the  (**Fax**) button.

- 3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.




See also:

- "Resolution" on page 264
- "Lighten/Darken" on page 266


- 4 Select OnHook, and then press the  button.

- 5 Select On, and then press the  button.

- 6 Enter the fax number of the remote fax machine using the numeric keypad.

- If the document is loaded on the ADF, press the  (**Start**) button.
- If the document is not loaded on the ADF, press the  (**Start**) button, select the desired setting, and then press the  button.


NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

■ Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the LCD panel.

If you receive an error message, press the  button to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission.

See also:

- ["Printing a Report" on page 311](#)
- ["Protocol Monitor \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 315](#)

■ Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see ["Redial Delay" on page 325](#) and ["Number of Redial" on page 325](#).

NOTE:

- The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See also:


- "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 262
- "Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 263

- 2 Press the  (**Fax**) button.




- 3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.


See also:


- "Resolution" on page 264
- "Lighten/Darken" on page 266


- 4 Select **Delayed Start**, and then press the  button.

- 5 Select **On**, and then press the  button.

- 6 Enter the start time using the numeric keypad or press the  or  button to select the start time, and then press the  button.

- 7 Select **Fax to**, and then press the  button.

- 8 Select **Keypad**, and then press the  button.

- 9 Enter the number of the remote machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.

You can also use speed dial or group dial numbers.

See also:

- "Automatic Dialing" on page 289

- 10 Press the  (**Start**) button.

Once the Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all the documents to be faxed to its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system or Mac OS® X by using the driver.

NOTE:

- Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.

This section includes:

- ["For Windows" on page 274](#)
- ["For Mac OS X" on page 277](#)

■ For Windows

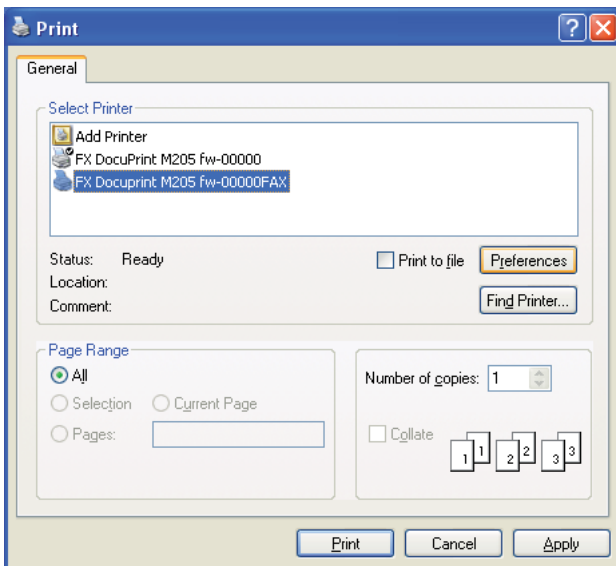
NOTE:

- The following procedure uses Windows XP WordPad as an example. The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the OS and application you are using.
- To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.

See also:

- ["Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows" on page 82](#)

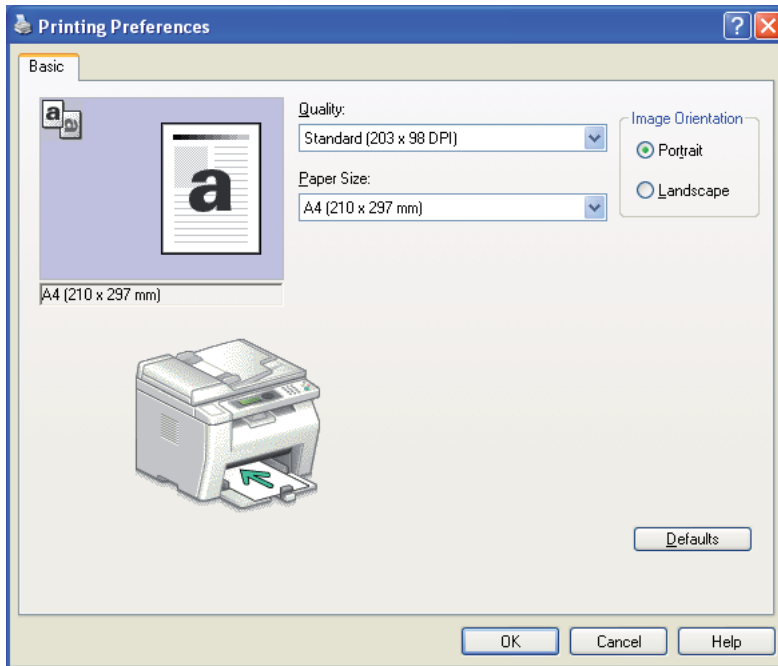
- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select your fax driver.
- 3 Click **Preferences**.



- 4 Specify the fax settings. For more information, click **Help** of the driver.

NOTE:

- The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.



5 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.

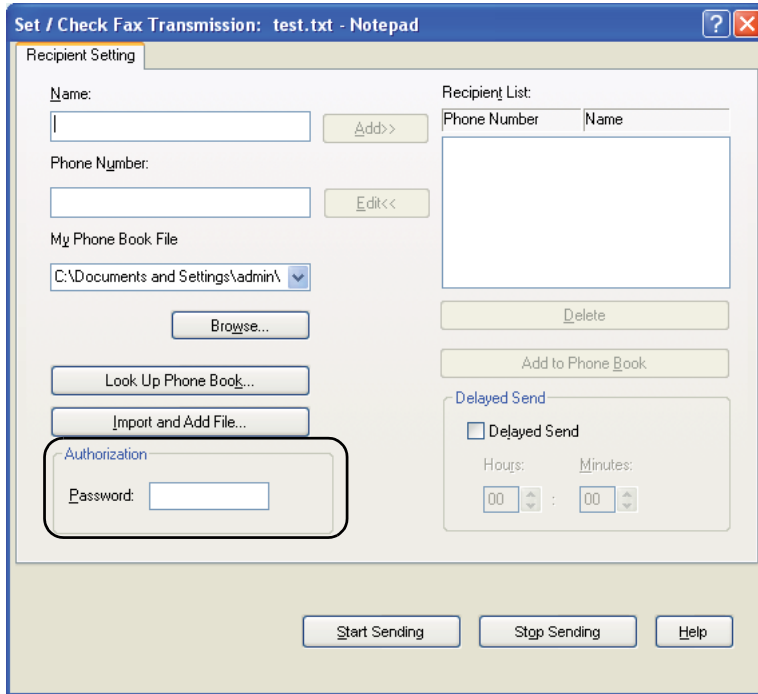
6 Click **Print**.

The **Set / Check Fax Transmission** dialog box appears.

7 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:

- Enter a name and phone number directly.
- Select a recipient from the Phone Book (PC Fax Address Book) saved on your computer or Address Book (Device Address Book).
- Select a recipient from a database other than the Phone Book (PC Fax Address Book) or Address Book (Device Address Book).

For more information on how to specify the destination, click **Help** to see the Help of the fax driver.



NOTE:

- Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

8 Click **Start Sending**.

■ For Mac OS X

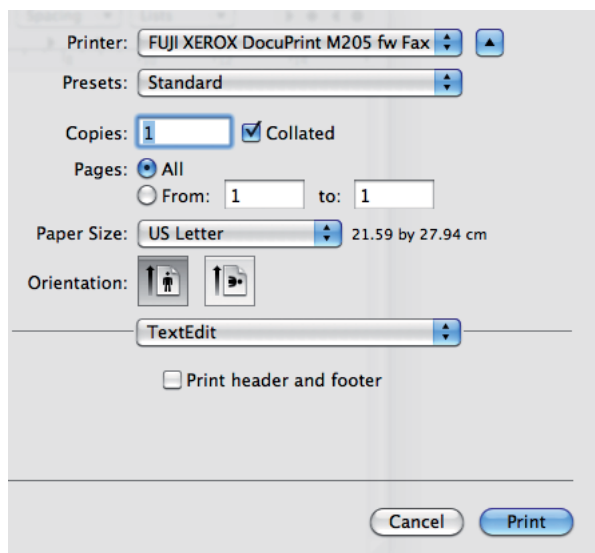
NOTE:

- The following procedure uses Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example. The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the OS and application you are using.
- When using a USB connection on Mac OS X 10.4.11, upgrade Common Unix Printing System (CUPS) software to version 1.2.12 or later. You can download it from CUPS web site.
- To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.

See also:

- ["Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X" on page 127](#)

- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select your fax driver.



- 3 Specify the fax settings.

NOTE:

- The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.

- 4 Click **Print**.

The **Fax Recipient** dialog box appears.

- 5 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:

- Specify a recipient directly.
 - a Enter a name and phone number directly.
 - b Click **Add to Recipient List**.

OR

- Select a recipient from the Phone Book saved on your computer.
 - a Click **Look Up Phone Book**.
The **Phone Book** dialog box appears.
 - b Select a recipient and then click **Add to Recipient List**.

c Click **Close**.

Fax Recipient

Add Fax Recipient List

Name

Phone Number

Company

Refer To Phone Book

Recipient List:

Name	Phone Number	Company
------	--------------	---------

Authorization

Password:

NOTE:

- Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

6 Click **OK**.

Receiving a Fax

This section includes:

- ["About Receiving Modes" on page 280](#)
- ["Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes" on page 281](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode" on page 282](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode" on page 283](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode" on page 284](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone" on page 285](#)
- ["Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode" on page 286](#)
- ["Receiving Faxes in the Memory" on page 287](#)
- ["Polling Receive" on page 288](#)

■ About Receiving Modes

There are five receiving modes; FAX Mode, TEL Mode, TEL/FAX Mode, Ans/FAX Mode, and DRPD Mode.

NOTE:

- To use TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode, attach an external telephone or answering machine to the phone connector (☎) on the back of your printer.
- When the memory is full, you cannot receive a fax. Delete any documents you no longer need from the memory.

See also:

- ["Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode" on page 282](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode" on page 283](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode" on page 284](#)
- ["Using an Answering Machine" on page 300](#)
- ["Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode" on page 286](#)

■ Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the priority sheet inserter (PSI) or multipurpose feeder (MPF) are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-, A4-, or Legal-sized paper.

See also:

- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 150](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 166](#)
- ["Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 168](#)


■ Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode

Your printer is preset to `FAX Mode` at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax receive mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.


To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call, see ["Auto Answer Fax" on page 323](#).

■ Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode

You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, and then pressing the  (**Start**) button.

The printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

■ Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode

To use TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode, you must attach an external telephone to the phone connector () on the back of your printer.

In the TEL/FAX Mode, if the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Ans. TEL/FAX, and then the printer automatically receives a fax.

In the Ans/FAX Mode, if the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.


NOTE:


- If you have set Auto Answer Fax and your answering machine is turned off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the fax receive mode after a predefined time.

See also:

- ["Using an Answering Machine" on page 300](#)

■ Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone

This feature works best when you are using an external telephone connected to the phone connector () on the back of your printer. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear fax tones, press the two-digit keys on the external telephone, or set `OnHook` to `Off` and then press the  (**Start**) button.

The printer receives the document.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing the two-digit keys once again.

`Remote Receive` is set to `Off` at the factory. You can change the two-digit number to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see ["Remote Rcv Tone" on page 325](#).

NOTE:






- Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

■ Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode

The Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the DRPD option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up DRPD, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your fax number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Fax Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `DRPD Pattern`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.
- 6 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

To receive faxes in the DRPD, you need to set the menu to DRPD Mode. For more details, see ["Ans Select" on page 323](#).

Your printer provides seven DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

See also:





- ["DRPD Pattern" on page 327](#)

■ Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the toner cartridges, the printer automatically prints the fax.

■ Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

- 1 Press the  (**Fax**) button.
- 2 Select **Polling Receive**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **On**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Enter the fax number of the remote machine, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- For information on how to enter the fax number of the remote machine, see "[Sending a Fax Automatically](#)" on page 268.

- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button.

Automatic Dialing

This section includes:














- ["Speed Dialing" on page 290](#)
- ["Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 291](#)
- ["Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial" on page 292](#)
- ["Group Dialing" on page 293](#)
- ["Setting Group Dial" on page 294](#)
- ["Editing Group Dial" on page 295](#)
- ["Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing \(Multi-address Transmission\)" on page 296](#)
- ["Printing an Address Book List" on page 297](#)

■ Speed Dialing

You can store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (01– 99).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services.

■ Storing a Number for Speed Dialing






- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Phone Book`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Speed Dial`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired speed dial number between 01 and 99, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Name`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Enter the name, and then press the  button.
- 8 Select `Phone Number`, and then press the  button.
- 9 Enter the number you want to store using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
To insert a pause between numbers, press the  (**Redial/Pause**) button. "-" appears on the LCD panel.
- 10 Select `Apply Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 11 Select `Yes`, and then press the  button.
- 12 To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 5 to 11.
- 13 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

■ Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass and close the document cover.


See also:


- "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 262
- "Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 263

- 2 To enter the speed dial number, do either of the following after pressing the  (**Fax**) button:
 - Select **Fax to**, and then press the  button. Select **Speed Dial**, and then press the  button.
 - Press the  (**Speed Dial**) button.
- 3 Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad. The corresponding entry's name briefly appears on the LCD panel.
- 4 Press the  button.
- 5 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

See also:

- "Resolution" on page 264
- "Lighten/Darken" on page 266

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button.
- 7 The document scans to the memory.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select **Yes** to add more documents or to select **No** to begin sending the fax immediately, and then press the  button.
- 8 The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

NOTE:

- Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 0*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 01 and 09.













■ Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations. You can create up to six groups. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

NOTE:
















- You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

■ Setting Group Dial

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Phone Book`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Group Dial`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired group dial number between 01 and 06, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Name`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Enter the name, and then press the  button.
- 8 Select `Speed Dial No`, and then press the  button.
- 9 Select the speed dial numbers, and then press the  button.
- 10 Select `Apply Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 11 Ensure that `Are You Sure?` is displayed, select `Yes`, and then press the  button.
- 12 To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 5 to 11.
- 13 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

■ Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
 - 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
 - 3 Select `Phone Book`, and then press the  button.
 - 4 Select `Group Dial`, and then press the  button.
 - 5 Select the group dial number that you want to edit, and then press the  button.
 - 6 To change the group dial name:
 - a Select `Name`, and then press the  button.
 - b Enter a new name, and then press the  button.
 - c Select `Apply Settings`, and then press the  button.
 - d Ensure that `Are You Sure?` is displayed, select `Yes`, and then press the  button.
 - 7 To change the speed dial number:
 - a Select `Speed Dial No`, and then press the  button.
 - b Select or deselect the desired speed dial number. Press the  button.
 - c Select `Apply Settings`, and then press the  button.
 - d Ensure that `Are You Sure?` is displayed, select `Yes`, and then press the  button.
- NOTE:**
- When you delete the last speed dial in a group, the group itself is not deleted.
- 8 To delete the group dial:
 - a Press the **C (Clear)** button.
 - b Ensure that `Are You Sure?` is displayed, select `Yes`, and then press the  button.
 - 9 If you want to edit another group dial number or enter a new group dial number, repeat steps 5 to 8.
 - 10 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

■ Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for broadcasting or delayed transmissions.




Follow the procedure of the desired operation (For delayed transmission, see ["Sending a Delayed Fax" on page 272](#)).

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the ADF or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

■ Printing an Address Book List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing an Address Book List.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Address Book`, and then press the  button.
A list of your speed dial and group dial entries is printed.

Other Ways to Fax

This section includes:

- ["Using the Secure Receiving Mode" on page 299](#)
- ["Using an Answering Machine" on page 300](#)
- ["Using a Computer Modem" on page 301](#)








■ Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure receiving mode using the `Secure Receive` option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure receiving mode, all incoming faxes will get saved in the memory. When the mode turns off, any faxes stored will be printed.

NOTE:


- Before operation, ensure that `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Enter the password specified for `Panel Lock`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Secure Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Secure Receive`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Secure Receive Set`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select `Enable`, and then press the  button.



NOTE:

- The factory-default password is 0000.




- 8 To return to the standby mode, press the  (**System**) button.

When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and the `Job Status` screen displays `Secure Receive` to let you know that there is a fax stored.



NOTE:

- If you change the password while `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Enable`, perform steps 1 to 5. Select `Change Password`, and then press the  button. Enter the new password, and then press the  button.

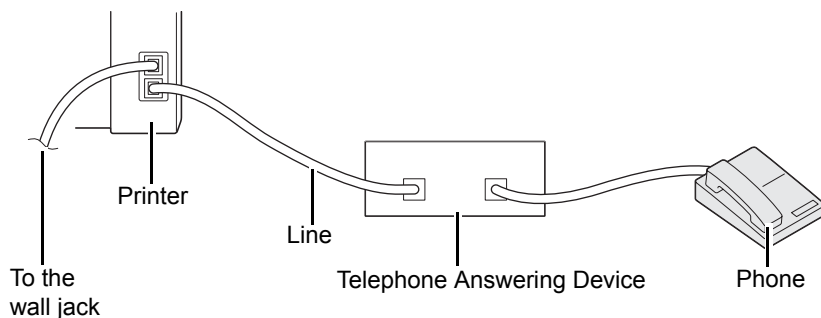
To print received documents:

- 1 Press the  (**Job Status**) button.
- 2 Select `Secure Receive`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Enter the password, and then press the  button.
The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

- 1 Access the `Secure Receive Set` menu by following steps 1 to 6 in "[To turn the secure receiving mode on:](#)".
- 2 Select `Disable`, and then press the  button.
- 3 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

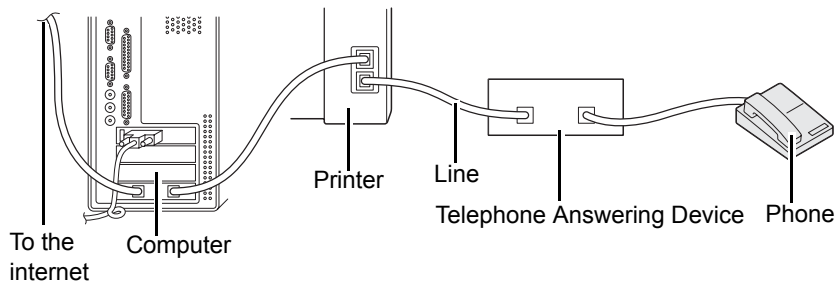
■ Using an Answering Machine



You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the back of your printer as shown above.

- Set your printer to **Ans/FAX Mode** and set **Auto Ans. Ans/FAX** to specify the time for the TAD to respond.
- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.
- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the fax receive mode after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.
- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you
 - Set **OnHook** to **On** (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then press the **Start** button and hang up the receiver.
 - Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

■ Using a Computer Modem



If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the back of your printer with the TAD as shown above.






- Set your printer to **Ans/FAX Mode** and set **Auto Ans. Ans/FAX** to specify the time for the TAD to respond.
- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Setting Sounds






This section includes:

- ["Speaker Volume" on page 303](#)
- ["Ringer Volume" on page 304](#)

■ Speaker Volume

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Fax Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Line Monitor`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired volume, and then press the  button.
- 6 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

■ Ringer Volume







- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Fax Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Ring Tone Volume`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired volume, and then press the  button.
- 6 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Specifying the Fax Settings

This section includes:

- ["Changing the Fax Settings Options" on page 306](#)
- ["Available Fax Setting Options" on page 307](#)


■ Changing the Fax Settings Options

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Fax Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad.
- 6 Press the  button to save the selection.
- 7 If necessary, repeat steps 4 to 6.
- 8 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

For details on available menu items, see "[Available Fax Setting Options](#)" on page 307.

■ Available Fax Setting Options












You can use the following setting options for configuring the fax system:

Option	Description
Ans Select	TEL Mode Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, pressing the remote receive code, and then pressing the  (Start) button.
	FAX Mode * Automatically receives faxes.
	TEL/FAX Mode When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Ans. TEL/FAX , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans/FAX Mode The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your region, this mode is not supported.
	DRPD Mode Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Answer Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
Auto Ans. TEL/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
Auto Ans. Ans/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Ans Select is set to TEL/FAX Mode .
Line Type	Sets the line type.
Dialing Type	Sets the dialing type. NOTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This menu is not displayed when Region is set to Australia.
Interval Timer	Specifies the interval between transmission attempts.
Number of Redial	Specifies the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
Redial Delay	Specifies the interval between redial attempts.
Junk Fax Filter	Sets whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Address Book .
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	Specifies the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive .
Send Header	Sets whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Option	Description
Company Name	Sets the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Your Fax Number	Sets the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Sets the DRPD setting from <code>Pattern1</code> to <code>Pattern7</code> . DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.
Prefix Dial	Specifies whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Sets whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting <code>Auto Reduction</code> automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.
ECM	Sets whether to enable the ECM. To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
Extel Hook Thresh	You can select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.
Modem Speed	Specifies the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Region	Sets the region where the printer is used.

• Prefix Dial







NOTE:

- Prefix Dial only supports the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.
- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
 - 2 Select Admin Menu, and then press the  button.
 - 3 Select Fax Settings, and then press the  button.
 - 4 Select Line Type, and then press the  button.
 - 5 Select PBX, and then press the  button.
 - 6 Press the  (**Back**) button to return to the previous menu.
 - 7 Select Prefix Dial, and then press the  button.
 - 8 Select On, and then press the  button.
 - 9 Press the  (**Back**) button to return to the previous menu.
 - 10 Select Prefix Dial Num, and then press the  button.
 - 11 Enter an up-to-five-digit prefix number from 0–9, *, and #.
 - 12 Press the  button when the prefix dial number on the LCD panel is correct.
 - 13 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Changing Setting Options

The fax menu options can be set to the most frequently used modes.

To create your own default settings:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Fax Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5, as needed.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

- Address Book List

This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the memory of the printer as Address Book information.

- Fax Activity Report

This report shows information about the recent 50 faxes you received or sent.

- Protocol Monitor

This report shows the status of the protocol when the latest fax was being sent.

- Monitor Report

This report shows the details of a fax job. This is printed when the fax was successfully sent.

- Transmission Report

This report shows the details of a fax job. This is printed when the fax transmission failed.




- Broadcast Report

This report shows all the destinations of a broadcast fax and the transmission result for each destination.

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

To print a report or list:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the report or list you want to print, and then press the  button.
The selected report or list is printed.

NOTE:

- You cannot manually print Monitor Report, Transmission Report or Broadcast Report using the procedure above. They are printed after a fax job completed according to the setting. For details on the setting of when to print them, see "[Fax Transmit](#)" on page 329 or "[Fax Broadcast](#)" on page 329.

Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad

This chapter includes:

- ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 314](#)
- ["Panel Lock Function" on page 352](#)
- ["Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 355](#)
- ["Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode" on page 356](#)
- ["Resetting to Factory Defaults" on page 357](#)
- ["Using the Numeric Keypad" on page 358](#)


Understanding the Printer Menus

When you are not an administrator, the access to `Admin Menu` can be limited. This prevents unauthorized users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change the default menu settings that has been set by the administrator. However, you can change settings for individual print jobs using the print driver. Print settings selected from the print driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel.

■ Report / List

Use `Report / List` to print various types of reports and lists.

NOTE:

- A password is required to enter the `Report / List` menu when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the  button.
- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the information such as the printer name, serial number, and print volume.

For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, network settings are also printed.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings on the operator panel menus.

Job History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 50 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Demo Page

Purpose:

To print a test page.

Protocol Monitor (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Address Book (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Purpose:

To print the list of all addresses stored as Address Book information.

Fax Activity (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Purpose:

To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

■ Meter Reading

Use `Meter Reading` to check the total number of printed pages.


Values:

Meter 1	Does not work.
Meter 2	Displays the total number of monochrome prints.
Meter 3	Does not work.
Meter 4	Displays the total number of monochrome prints.

■ Admin Menu

Use `Admin Menu` to configure a variety of printer features.

NOTE:

- A password is required to enter the `Admin Menu` menu when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the  button.

Phone Book (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Use the `Phone Book` menu to configure the speed dial and group dial settings.

• Speed Dial

Purpose:

To store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations.

NOTE:

- The first eight entries are assigned to the one-touch buttons on the operator panel.

See also:

- ["Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 291](#)

• Group Dial

Purpose:

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a 2-digit dial code. Up to 6 group dial codes can be registered.

See also:

- ["Setting Group Dial" on page 294](#)

Network (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Use the `Network` menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the network.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Ethernet

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10BASE-T Half	Uses 10base-T half-duplex.
10BASE-T Full	Uses 10base-T full-duplex.
100BASE-TX Half	Uses 100base-TX half-duplex.
100BASE-TX Full	Uses 100base-TX full-duplex.

NOTE:

- This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wired network.

• Status (DocuPrint M205 fw Only)

Purpose:

To display the information on the wireless signal strength. No changes can be made on the operator panel to improve the status of the wireless connection.

Values:

Good	Indicates good signal strength.
Acceptable	Indicates marginal signal strength.
Low	Indicates insufficient signal strength.
No Reception	Indicates that no signal is received.

NOTE:

- This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

- **Wireless Setup (DocuPrint M205 fw Only)**

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network interface.

Values:

Manual Setup	Enter Network (SSID)	Specify a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	Infrastructure	Select when you configure the wireless setting through the access point such as a wireless router.
	No Security	Specify No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method from WEP, WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, and WPA2-PSK-AES.
	WEP(64Bit)	Specify the WEP 64bit Key to use through the wireless network. Enter 10 hexadecimal characters.
	Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.
	WEP(128Bit)	Specify the WEP 128bit Key to use through the wireless network. Enter 26 hexadecimal characters.
	Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.
	WPA-PSK-TKIP	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA-PSK-TKIP.
	PassPhrase Entry	Specify the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when WPA-PSK-TKIP is selected for Encryption Type.
	WPA-PSK-AES	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA-PSK-AES.
	PassPhrase Entry	Specify the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when WPA-PSK-AES is selected for Encryption Type.
	WPA2-PSK-AES	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA2-PSK-AES.
	PassPhrase Entry	Specify the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when WPA2-PSK-AES is selected for Encryption Type.
Ad-hoc	Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.	
No Security	Specify No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying the security method from WEP.	
WEP(64Bit)	Specify the WEP 64bit Key to use through the wireless network. Enter 10 hexadecimal characters.	
Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.	
WEP(128Bit)	Specify the WEP 128bit Key to use through the wireless network. Enter 26 hexadecimal characters.	
Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.	

WPS	Push Button Control	PBC Start	No*	Disables the security method of WPS-PBC.
			Yes	Configures the wireless setting with the security method of WPS-PBC.
	PIN Code	Start Configuration		Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.
		Print PIN Code		Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when you enter the PIN code to your computer.

NOTE:

- This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

• Reset Wireless (DocuPrint M205 fw Only)

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their factory default values.

Values:

No*	Does not reset the wireless setting.
Yes	Resets the wireless setting.

NOTE:

- This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

• TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

IP Mode	Dual Stack*		Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
	IPv4		Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
IPv4	Get IP Address	Auto IP*	Automatically sets the IP address.
		BOOTP	Uses BOOTP to set the IP address.
		RARP	Uses RARP to set the IP address.
		DHCP	Uses DHCP to set the IP address.
		Panel	Enables the IP address entered on the operator panel.
		IP Address	Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.
	Subnet Mask	Manually sets the subnet mask.	
	Gateway Address	Manually sets the gateway address.	

NOTE:

- To configure the IPv6 settings, use CentreWare Internet Services.

• Protocol

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

LPD	Disable	Disables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
	Enable*	Enables the LPD port.
Port 9100	Disable	Disables the Port 9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port 9100 port.
WSD	Disable	Disables the WSD port.
	Enable*	Enables the WSD port.
SNMP	Disable	Disables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the SNMP UDP port.
StatusMessenger	Disable	Disables the StatusMessenger feature.
	Enable*	Enables the StatusMessenger feature.
CentreWare Internet Services	Disable	Disables an access to CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
LLTD	Disable	Disables the LLTD.
	Enable*	Enables the LLTD.
Bonjour(mDNS)	Disable	Disables the Bonjour (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables the Bonjour (mDNS).

NOTE:

- WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

• Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in Non-Volatile Memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Values:

Yes	Initializes the wired network data stored in NVM.
No*	Does not initialize the wired network data stored in NVM.

Fax Settings (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Use the `Fax Settings` menu to configure the basic fax settings.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Ans Select

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, pressing the remote receive code, and then pressing Start button.
FAX Mode*	Automatically receives faxes.
TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Ans. TEL/FAX , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
Ans/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your region, this mode is not supported.
DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

• Auto Answer Fax

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.

• Auto Ans. TEL/FAX

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is six seconds.

• Auto Ans. Ans/FAX

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.

• Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Min	Sets the volume of the line monitor.
Middle*	
Max	

• Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Ans Select` is set to `TEL/FAX Mode`.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Min	Sets the volume of the ring tone.
Middle	
Max*	

• Line Type

Purpose:

To select the line type.

Values:

PSTN*	Sets the line type to PSTN.
PBX	Sets the line type to PBX.

• Dialing Type

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

Tone*	Sets the dialing type to <code>Tone</code> .
DP (10PPS)	Sets the dialing type to <code>Dial Pulse (10 pulse per second)</code> .

NOTE:

- This menu is not displayed when `Region` is set to `Australia`.

• Interval Timer

Purpose:

To specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is eight seconds.

• Number of Redial

Purpose:

To specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 9. If you enter **0**, the printer will not redial. The default is 3.

• Redial Delay

Purpose:

To specify the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes. The default is one minute.

• Junk Fax Filter

Purpose:

To reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Address Book.

Values:

Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

NOTE:

- Ensure to register the fax numbers you want to accept faxes from in the Address Book before using `Junk Fax Filter`.

• Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.

• Remote Rcv Tone

Purpose:

To specify the remote receive code in two digits to start `Remote Receive`.

• Send Header

Purpose:

To print the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Values:

Off	Does not print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
On*	Prints the information of sender on the header of faxes.

• **Company Name**

Purpose:

To set the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.

• **Your Fax Number**

Purpose:

To set the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.

• **Fax Cover Page**

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

• DRPD Pattern

Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern1-7

DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:



Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400ms, stops for 800ms, rings for 400ms and stops for 1400ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.

• Prefix Dial

Purpose:

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
On	Sets a prefix dial number.

• Prefix Dial Num

Purpose:

To set a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

• Discard Size

Purpose:

To set whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.

Values:

Off	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess at the bottom of a fax page.
Auto Reduction*	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the output paper.

• ECM

Purpose:

To set whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disable the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

• Extel Hook Thresh

Purpose:

To select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.

Values:

Lower	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to <i>Lower</i> .
Normal*	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to <i>Normal</i> .
Higher	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to <i>Higher</i> .

• Modem Speed

Purpose:

To specify the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Values:

2.4 Kbps
4.8 Kbps
9.6 Kbps
14.4 Kbps
33.6 Kbps*

• Fax Activity

Purpose:

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Values:

Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report.

• Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.

• Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always*	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

• Region

Purpose:

To select the region where the printer is used.

System Settings

Use the `System Settings` menu to configure a variety of printer features.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Power Saving Timer

Purpose:


To specify the time for transition to the Power Saver mode.

Values:

Low Power Timer	1min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the Low Power mode after it finishes a job.
	1-30min	
Sleep Timer	10min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the Sleep mode after it goes into the Low Power mode.
	6-11min	

Enter **1** in **Low Power Timer** to put the printer in the Low Power mode one minute after it finishes a job. This uses less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter **1** if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 1 and 30 minutes for the Low Power mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the Power Saver mode when it receives data from the computer. In the Low Power mode, you can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel. In the Sleep mode, you can return the printer to the standby mode by pressing the  (**Energy Saver**) button.

• Auto Reset

Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings for copying, scanning, or faxing to the defaults and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time. (The fax feature is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)

Values:

45sec*
1min
2min
3min
4min

• Fault Time-Out

Purpose:

To specify the time taken by the printer before it cancels jobs that stop abnormally. The job is cancelled if it times out.

Values:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On	60sec*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it cancels for jobs that stop abnormally.
	3-300sec	

• Job Time-Out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if it times out.

Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On	30sec* 5-300sec	Specifies the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.

• Clock Settings

Purpose:

To set the date and time, and regional time zone of the printer.

Values:

Set Date		Specifies the current date.
Set Time		Specifies the current time.
Date Format	yy / mm / dd mm / dd / yy dd / mm / yy*	Specifies the date format.
Time Format	12H* 24H	Specifies the time format.
Time Zone		Specifies the time zone.

• Alert Tone

Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Panel Select Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
	Medium	
	High	
Panel Alert Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Medium	
	High	
Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume five seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Medium	
	High	

Job Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job is complete.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job is complete.
	Medium*	
	High	
Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
	Medium*	
	High	
All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.
	Low	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Medium	
	High	

• mm / inch

Purpose:

To specify the measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

Millimeters (mm)*	Specifies the default measurement unit.
Inches (")	

• Low Toner Alert Msg

Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
On*	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.

• Power On Wizard

Purpose:

To perform initial settings for the printer.

See also:

- ["Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel" on page 48](#)

Values:

Yes	Performs the initial settings for the printer.
No*	Does not perform the initial settings for the printer.

Maintenance

Use the **Maintenance** menu to initialize Non-Volatile Memory (NVM), configure the paper type adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• F/W Version

Purpose:

To display the version of the controller.

• Adjust BTR

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller (BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

NOTE:

- The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 – +3
Light Card	0*
	-3 – +3
Labels	0*
	-3 – +3
Envelope	0*
	-3 – +3
Recycled	0*
	-3 – +3
Postcard	0*
	-3 – +3

• Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

NOTE:

- The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 – +3
Light Card	0*
	-3 – +3
Labels	0*
	-3 – +3
Envelope	0*
	-3 – +3
Recycled	0*
	-3 – +3
Postcard	0*
	-3 – +3

• Density Adjustment

Purpose:

To adjust the print density level within the range of -3 to +3. The factory default menu setting is 0.

• Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge.

Values:

Yes	Stirs the toner in a new toner cartridge.
No*	Does not stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

• Toner Refresh

Purpose:

To use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Values:

Black	Yes	Cleans the toner in the toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the toner cartridge.

• Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize NVM for system parameters, Address Book data for fax, or Address Book data for e-mail. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their factory default values. (Address Book is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)

See also:

- ["Resetting to Factory Defaults" on page 357](#)

Values:

DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw:

User Fax Section	Yes	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.
System Section	Yes	Initializes the system parameters.
	No*	Does not initialize the system parameters.

DocuPrint M205 b:

System Section	Yes	Initializes the system parameters.
	No*	Does not initialize the system parameters.

• Non-Genuine Mode

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

NOTE:

- Using non-genuine toner cartridges may make some printer features unusable, reduce print quality and decrease the reliability of your printer. Fuji Xerox recommends only new Fuji Xerox brand toner cartridges for your printer. Fuji Xerox does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using consumables not supplied by Fuji Xerox.
- Before you use toner cartridge of another manufacturer, be sure to restart the printer.

Values:

Toner	Off*	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
	On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

• Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure.

Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

NOTE:

- An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner.

Values:

0m*	Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	

• Counter Reset

Purpose:

To reset the toner counter.

Values:

Yes	Reset the toner counter.
No*	Does not reset the toner counter.

Secure Settings

Use the `Secure Settings` menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Panel Lock

Purpose:

To restrict access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.

See also:

- ["Panel Lock Function" on page 352](#)

NOTE:

- For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, you can select Disable for Panel Lock Set when all items under Service Lock are set to Unlocked and Secure Receive Set is set to Disable.
- For the DocuPrint M205 b, you can select Disable for Panel Lock Set when all items under Service Lock are set to Unlocked.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Disable*	Does not restrict access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.
	Enable	Restricts access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.
Change Password	0000*-9999	Sets or changes the password required to access Admin Menu and Report / List.

• Service Lock

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable each of the printer services or to require a password to use the services, and to set or change the password.

See also:

- ["Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 355](#)

NOTE:

- You can access to the items under Service Lock only when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

Values:

COPY	Unlocked*	Enables the Copy service.
	Locked	Disables the Copy service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Copy service, but requires a password.
FAX (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)	Unlocked*	Enables the FAX service.
	Locked	Disables the FAX service (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
	Password Locked	Enables the FAX services, but requires a password to send faxes (does not require a password to receive incoming faxes).
SCAN	Unlocked*	Enables the Scan service.
	Locked	Disables the Scan service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Scan service, but requires a password.
Change Password	0000*-9999	Sets or changes the password required to use the Copy, FAX, and Scan services.

• Secure Receive (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Purpose:

To specify whether to require a password to print incoming faxes, and to set or change the password. When `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Enable`, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

NOTE:

- You can access to the items under `Secure Receive` only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Disable*	Does not require a password to print incoming faxes.
	Enable	Requires a password to print incoming faxes.
Change Password	0000-9999	Sets or changes the password required to print incoming faxes.

Scan to E-Mail (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Use the `Scan to E-Mail` menu to edit the transmission source.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Edit From Field

Purpose:

To enable or disable editing of the transmission source.

Values:

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable*	Enables editing of the transmission source.

USB Settings

Use the `USB Settings` menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Port Status

Purpose:

To enable or disable the USB interface.

Values:

Disable	Disables the USB interface.
Enable*	Enables the USB interface.

■ Defaults Settings

Use the `Defaults Settings` menu to configure the default copy, scan, and fax settings of the printer. (The fax feature is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)

Copy Defaults

Use the `Copy Defaults` menus to configure a variety of copy features.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Collated

Purpose:

To sort the copy job.

Values:

Off*	Does not sort the copy job.
On	Sorts the copy job.
Auto	Automatically determines which output mode for the copy job.

• Reduce/Enlarge

Purpose:

To set the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.

Values:

mm series

200%
A5→A4 (141%)
A5→B5 (122%)
100%*
B5→A5 (81%)
A4→A5 (70%)
50%

inch series

200%
Stmt→Lgl (154%)
Stmt→Ltr (129%)
100%*
Lgl→Ltr (78%)
Ldgr→Ltr (64%)
50%

NOTE:

- You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press the ► button to enlarge the zoom ratio or press the ◀ button to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals.
- This item is available only when `Multiple Up` is set to `Off` or `Manual`.

• Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 × 297 mm)*
A5 (148 × 210 mm)
B5 (182 × 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 × 11")
Folio (8.5 × 13") (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)
Legal (8.5 × 14") (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)
Executive (7.25 × 10.5")

• Document Type

Purpose:

To select the copy image quality.

Values:

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Mixed*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

• Lighten/Darken

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighter2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

• Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

• Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

• Gray Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default gray balance level within the range of -2 to +2. The factory default menu setting is 0.

• Multiple Up

Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform Multiple Up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Card Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in <i>Reduce/Enlarge</i> .

• Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

• Margin Left/Right

Purpose:

To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

• Margin Middle

Purpose:

To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0 mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Scan Defaults

Use the `Scan Defaults` menus to configure a variety of scanner features.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Scan to Network (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Purpose:

To store the scanned image on a network server or on a computer.

Values:

Computer(Net)*	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server(FTP)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.

• File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*
TIFF
JPEG

• Color

Purpose:

To set the color mode.

Values:

Black & White	Scans in black and white mode. This is available only when File Format is set to PDF or TIFF .
Grayscale	Scans in grayscale mode.
Color*	Scans in color mode.
Color(Photo)	Scans in color mode. This is suitable for photographic images.

• Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the default scan resolution.

Values:

200 × 200dpi*
300 × 300dpi
400 × 400dpi
600 × 600dpi

• Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 × 297 mm)*
A5 (148 × 210 mm)
B5 (182 × 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 × 11")
Folio (8.5 × 13") (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)
Legal (8.5 × 14") (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)
Executive (7.25 × 10.5")

• Lighten/Darken

Purpose:

To set the default scan density level.

Values:

Lighter2	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

• Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.
Softest	

• Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

• Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

2 mm*/0.1 inch*

Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch

• Margin Left/Right

Purpose:

To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

2 mm*/0.1 inch*

Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch

• Margin Middle

Purpose:

To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0 mm*/0.0 inch*

Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch

• TIFF File Format

Purpose:

To specify the TIFF file format.

Values:

TIFF V6*

TTN2

• Image Compression

Purpose:

To specify the image compression level.

Values:

Higher

Sets the image compression level to *Higher*.

Normal*

Sets the image compression level to *Normal*.

Lower

Sets the image compression level to *Lower*.

• Max E-Mail Size (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.

Fax Defaults (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Use the `Fax Defaults` menus to configure a variety of fax features.

NOTE:

- The Fax service cannot be used unless you set up a region code under `Region`. If `Region` is not set up, a message `Set The Region Code` appears on the LCD panel.
- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.

Values:

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution. See the notes below.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE:

- Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

• Document Type

Purpose:

To select the default document type.

Values:

Text*	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

• Lighten/Darken

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighter2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.

Darker1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

• Delayed Start

Purpose:

This feature enables you to set a specific time for the fax transmission to start. Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Values:

21:00*/PM9:00*	Specify the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.
0:00 - 23:59 / AM/PM1:00 -	
12:59	

NOTE:

- A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in this printer.

■ Tray Settings

Use the `Tray Settings` menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder (MPF).

MPF

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the MPF.

Values:

Paper Size	A4 - 210x297*		
	A5 - 148x210		
	B5 - 182x257		
	Letter - 8.5x11		
	7.2x10.5"		
	US Folio - 8.5x13		
	Legal - 8.5x14		
	Statement		
	#10Env - 4.1x9.5		
	Monarch Env.		
	Monarch Env. L		
	C5 Env - 162x229		
	DL Env - 110x220		
	DL Env L - 110x220		
	148 x 100mm		
	148 x 200mm		
	Env Yougata 2		
	Env Yougata 2L		
	Env Yougata 3		
	Env Yougata 3L		
	Env Yougata 4		
	Env Yougata 6		
	Env Younaga 3		
	Env Nagagata 3		
	Env Nagagata 4		
	Env Kakugata 3		
New Custom Size	Portrait(Y)	297 mm*/11.7 inch*	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
		148 - 355 mm/5.8-14.0 inches	
	Landscape(X)	210 mm*/8.3 inch*	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
		77 - 215 mm/3.0-8.5 inches	

Paper Type	Plain*
	Light Card
	Labels
	Envelope
	Recycled
	Postcard

NOTE:

- For more information on supported paper sizes, see "[Usable Print Media](#)" on page 144.

■ Panel Language

NOTE:

- Value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default menu settings.

Purpose:

To specify the language to be used on the operator panel.

See also:

- ["Adjusting the Language" on page 184](#)

Values:

English*
Traditional Chinese
Simplified Chinese
Korean








Panel Lock Function

This feature prevents unauthorized users from changing settings on the operator panel made by the administrator. However, you can select settings for individual print jobs using the print driver.

This section includes:

- ["Enabling the Panel Lock" on page 353](#)
- ["Disabling the Panel Lock" on page 354](#)





■ Enabling the Panel Lock

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Secure Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Panel Lock`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Panel Lock Set`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Enable`, and then press the  button.
- 7 As necessary, select `Change Password`, and change the password using the numeric keypad. Then, press the  button.

NOTE:

- The factory-default panel password is 0000.








NOTE:

- Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password. However, for the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, the settings for the Address Book are cleared.
 - 1 Turn off the printer. Then, while holding the  (**System**) button, turn on the printer.
- If you change the password while `Panel Lock Set` is `Enable`, perform steps 1 to 2. Enter the current password, and then press the  button. Perform steps 3 to 4. Select `Change Password`, and then press the  button. Enter the new password, and then press the  button. This will change the password.

■ Disabling the Panel Lock

NOTE:








- For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, you can select **Disable for Panel Lock Set** when all items under **Service Lock** are set to **Unlocked** and **Secure Receive Set** is set to **Disable**.
- For the DocuPrint M205 b, you can select **Disable for Panel Lock Set** when all items under **Service Lock** are set to **Unlocked**.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Enter the password, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select **Secure Settings**, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select **Panel Lock**, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select **Panel Lock Set**, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select **Disable**, and then press the  button.

Limiting Access to Printer Operations





Enabling the Copy Lock, FAX Lock, Scan Lock options limits access to copy, fax, and scan operations. (FAX Lock is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)

Taking Copy Lock as an example, the following procedure explains how to enable or disable the option. Use the same procedure to enable or disable FAX Lock, Scan Lock.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Secure Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Panel Lock`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Panel Lock Set`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Enable`, and then press the  button.
- 7 As necessary, select `Change Password`, and change the password using the numeric keypad. Then, press the  button.










NOTE:

- The default password is 0000.

- 8 Press the  (**Back**) button.
- 9 Select `Service Lock`, and then press the  button.
- 10 Select `COPY`, and then press the  button.
- 11 Select one of the following option, and then press the  button.
 - Unlocked
 - Locked
 - Password Locked

Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode

You can set the power saving timer for the printer. The printer switches to the Power Saver mode after the specified time.







- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Power Saving Timer`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Low Power Timer` or `Sleep Timer`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
You can select from 1-30 minutes for `Low Power Timer` or 6-11 minutes for `Sleep Timer`.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

Resetting to Factory Defaults

After executing `Initialize NVM` and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their factory default values.

NOTE:

- The following procedure does not initialize the network settings.
 - For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, to initialize the wired network settings, refer to ["Initialize NVM" on page 322](#).
 - For the DocuPrint M205 fw, to initialize the wireless network settings, refer to [".Reset Wireless \(DocuPrint M205 fw Only\)" on page 321](#)

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Maintenance`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Initialize NVM`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `System Section` to initialize the menu parameters, and then press the  button.
For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, select `User Fax Section` to initialize the Address Book data for fax.
- 6 Select `Yes`, and then press the  button.
The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Using the Numeric Keypad

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter numbers. For example, when you enter the password, you enter four-digit number.


For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, you may also need to enter names. For example, when you set up your printer, you enter your name or your company name. When you store speed dial or group dial numbers, you need to enter the corresponding names.



■ Entering Characters (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

When prompted to enter a letter, press the appropriate button until the correct letter appears on the LCD panel.

For example, to enter the letter O, press **6**.

- Each time you press **6**, the display shows a different letter, m, n, o, M, N, O and finally 6.
- To enter additional letters, repeat the first step.
- Press the  button when you are finished.

Key	Assigned numbers, letters or characters
1	1 @ . _ - (space) \ & () ! " # \$ % ' ~ ^ ` ; : ? , + * / = [] { } < >
2	a b c A B C 2
3	d e f D E F 3
4	g h i G H I 4
5	j k l J K L 5
6	m n o M N O 6
7	p q r s P Q R S 7
8	t u v T U V 8
9	w x y z W X Y Z 9
0	0
*	- _ ~
#	(space) & ()

■ Changing Numbers or Names

If an incorrect number or name is entered, press the **C (Clear)** button to clear the number or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

Troubleshooting

This chapter includes:

- "Clearing Jams" on page 362
- "Basic Printer Problems" on page 376
- "Display Problems" on page 377
- "Printing Problems" on page 378
- "Print Quality Problems" on page 380
- "Copy Problem" on page 394
- "Copy Quality Problems" on page 395
- "Fax Problems (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)" on page 396
- "Scanning Problems" on page 398
- "Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems" on page 400
- "Other Problems" on page 401
- "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 402
- "Contacting Service" on page 410
- "Getting Help" on page 411
- "Non-Genuine Mode" on page 415

Clearing Jams

This section includes:

- ["Avoiding Jams" on page 363](#)
- ["Identifying the Location of Paper Jams" on page 364](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw\)" on page 365](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer" on page 369](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer" on page 370](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray" on page 372](#)
- ["Jam Problems" on page 375](#)

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid most jams.

See also:

- ["About Print Media" on page 138](#)
- ["Supported Print Media" on page 143](#)

NOTE:

- Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

■ Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media.
- See ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 150](#) and ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 158](#) to load print media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure that the stacked print media does not exceed the maximum height indicated on the paper width guides.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the MPF or the PSI.
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Ensure that the recommended print side is face up when you insert the print media.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment.
- Do not remove the paper cover during a print job.
- Ensure that all cables that connect to the printer are correctly attached.
- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.

See also:

- ["About Print Media" on page 138](#)
- ["Supported Print Media" on page 143](#)
- ["Print Media Storage Guidelines" on page 142](#)

■ Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

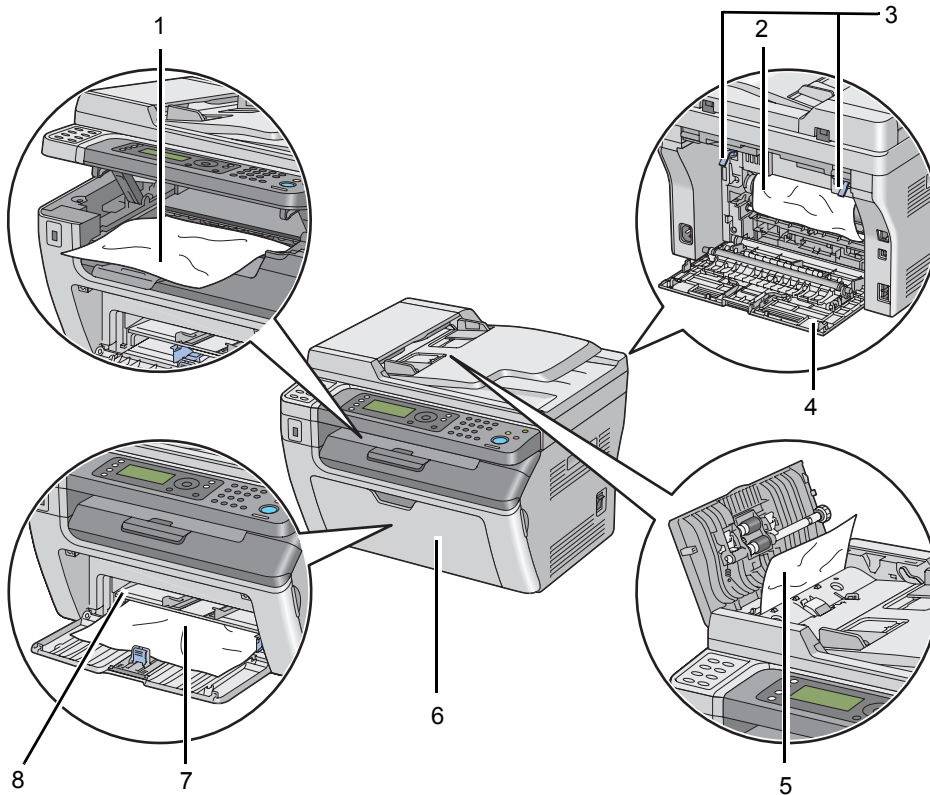
CAUTION:

- Do not attempt to remove a paper jammed deeply inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around a Fusing Unit or a heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product promptly and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.



- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Center Output Tray |
| 2 | Transfer Drum |
| 3 | Levers |
| 4 | Rear Cover |
| 5 | ADF Cover (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only) |
| 6 | Front Cover |
| 7 | Multipurpose feeder (MPF) |
| 8 | Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI) |

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw)

When a document jams while it passes through the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF), remove jams in the following procedure.

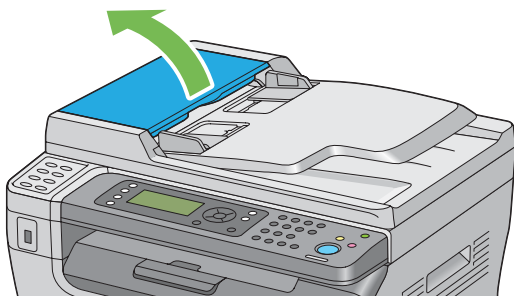
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
- To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

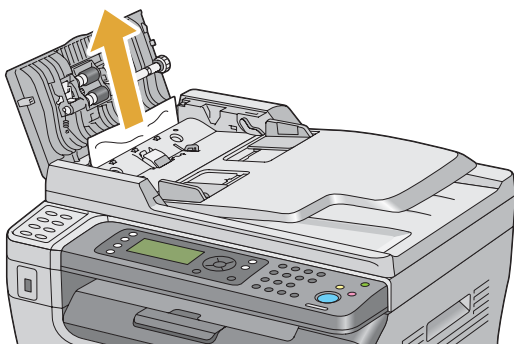
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

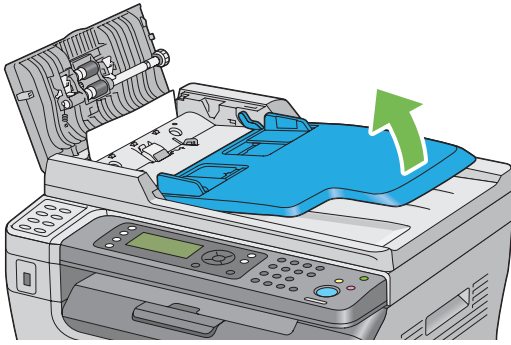
- 1 Open the ADF cover.



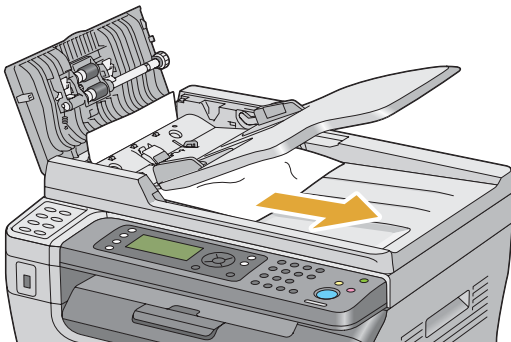
- 2 Remove the jammed document by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



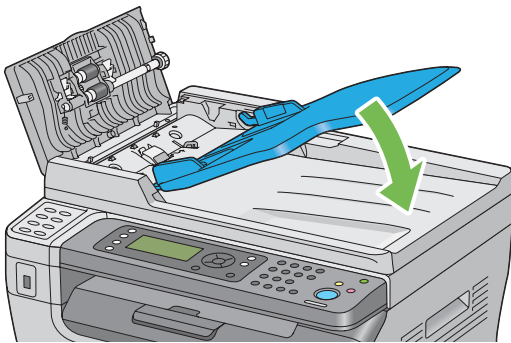
- 3 If you find it difficult to pull the document, open the document feeder tray.



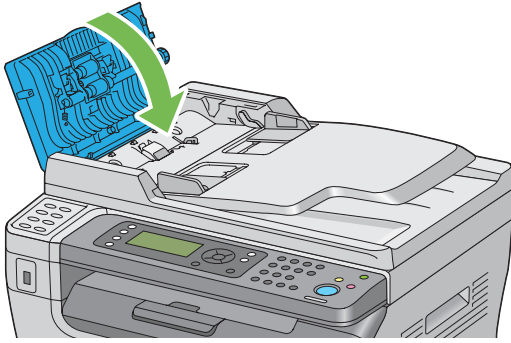
4 Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.



5 Close the document feeder tray.



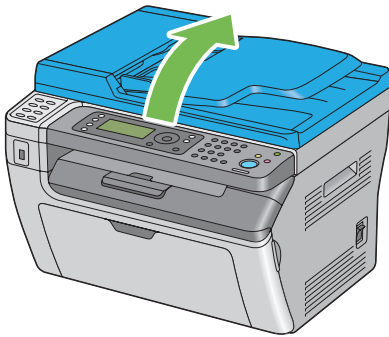
6 Close the ADF cover, and then load the documents back into the ADF.



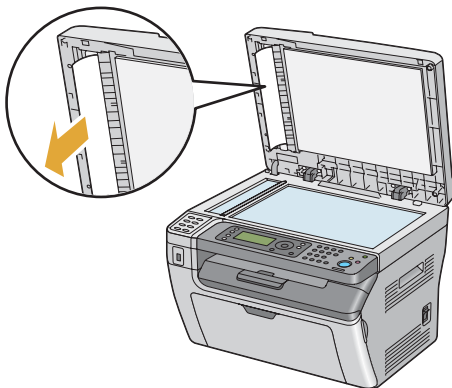
NOTE:

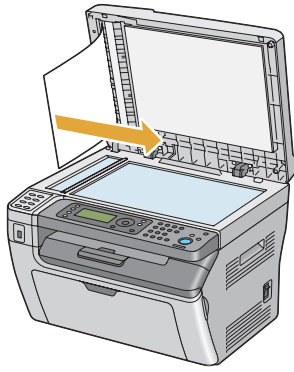
- Ensure that you adjust the document guides before printing a Legal-size document.

- 7** If you cannot remove the jammed document from the document output tray or cannot find any jammed document there, open the document cover.



- 8** Remove the document from the ADF feed roller or the feed area by carefully pulling the document in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



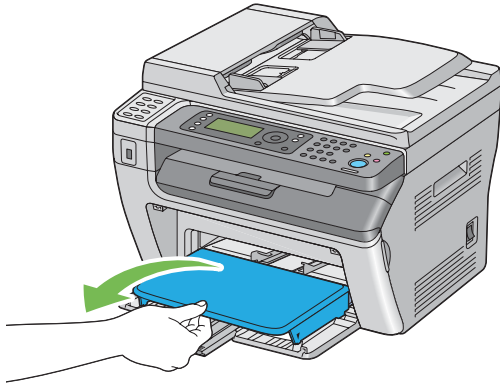


■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer

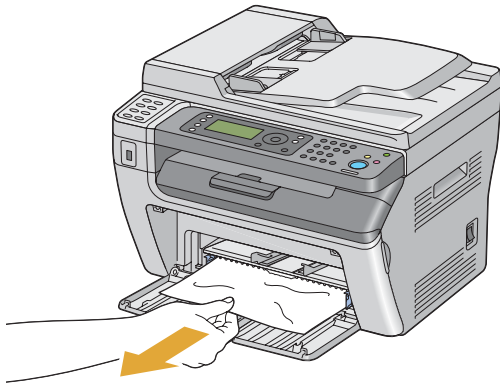
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

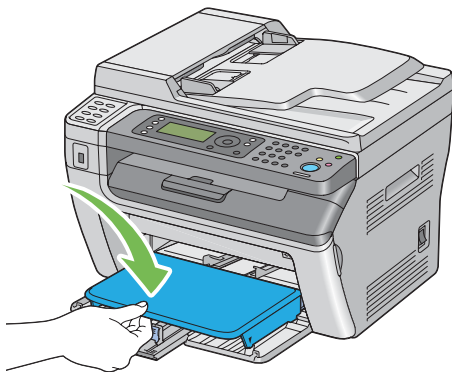
- 1 Remove the paper cover.



- 2 Remove any paper jammed from the front of the printer.



- 3 Replace the paper cover in the printer.



- 4 To restore the printer, press the **OK** button according to the instructions of the **Printer Status** window.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not use excessive force on the paper cover. Doing so could damage it or the inside of the printer.

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer

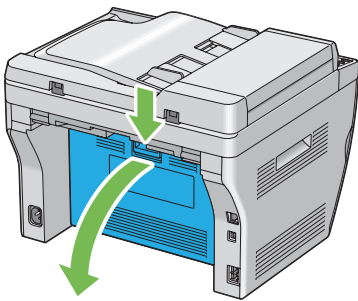
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
- To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

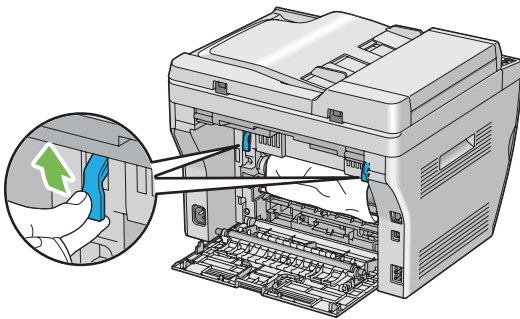
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

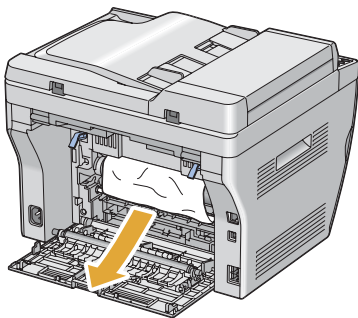
- 1 Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.



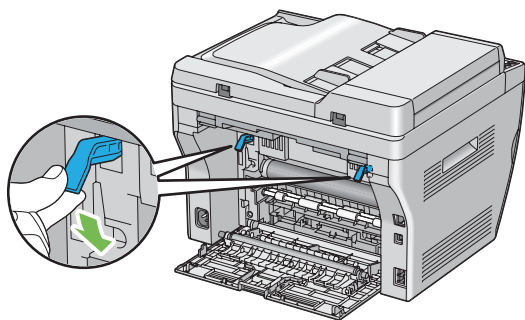
- 2 Lift up the levers.



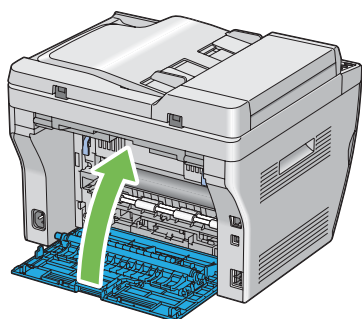
- 3 Remove any paper jammed from the back of the printer.



- 4 Lower the levers to their original position.



- 5 Close the rear cover.



If the error is not resolved, there may be a piece of paper remaining inside the printer. Use the following procedure to clear the jam.

- 6 Load print media on the MPF or PSI if there is no print media.
- 7 Press the **CA (Clear All)** button on the operator panel for 3 seconds.
The print media is fed to push out the jammed paper.

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray

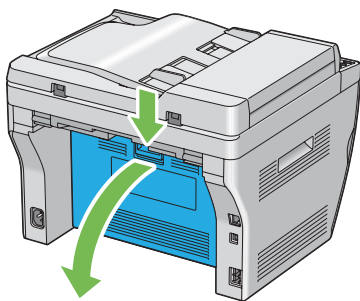
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
- To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

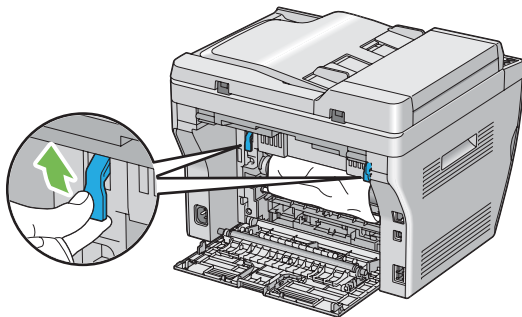
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

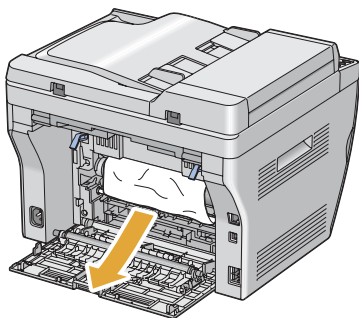
- 1 Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.



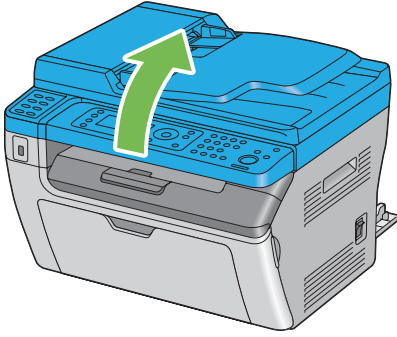
- 2 Lift up the levers.



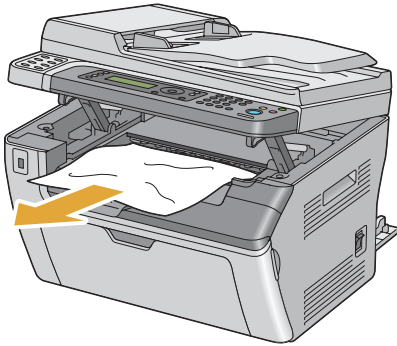
- 3 Remove any paper jammed from the back of the printer. If no paper is found in the paper path, face the front of the printer and check the center output tray.



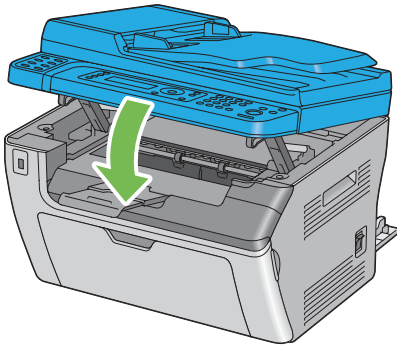
4 Lift and open the scanner.



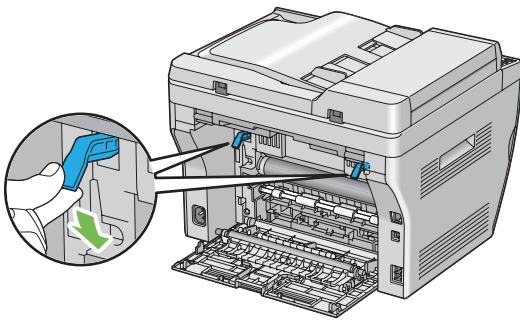
5 Remove any paper jammed out of the center output tray.



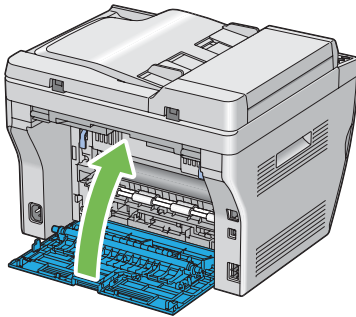
6 Lower and close the scanner.



7 Lower the levers to their original position.



- 8 Close the rear cover.



If the error is not resolved, there may be a piece of paper remaining inside the printer. Use the following procedure to clear the jam.

- 9 Load print media on the MPF or PSI if there is no print media.
- 10 Press the **CA (Clear All)** button on the operator panel for 3 seconds.
The print media is fed to push out the jammed paper.

■ Jam Problems

This section includes:

- ["Misfeed jam" on page 375](#)
- ["Multi-feed jam" on page 375](#)

Misfeed jam

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds occur.	Remove the paper from the PSI, and then ensure that the paper is properly inserted in the MPF. <hr/> Depending on the print media you use, take any of the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• For thick paper, use the one that is 163 gsm or less.• For postcard, the one up to 190 gsm is available.• For thin paper, use the one that is 60 gsm or more.• For the envelope, ensure that it is properly loaded in the MPF or the PSI as instructed in "Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 153 or in "Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 159 <hr/> If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope. <hr/> If performing manual duplex printing, ensure that the print media is not curled. <hr/> Fan the print media. <hr/> If the print media is damp, turn over the print media. <hr/> If the problem continues, use print media that is not damp.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Multi-feed jam

Problem	Action
Print media multiple feeds occur.	Remove the paper from the PSI, and then ensure that the paper is inserted properly in the MPF. <hr/> If the print media is damp, use print media that is not damp. <hr/> Fan the print media.
(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only) A document jam occurs in the ADF if scanning of multiple-sheet document is cancelled while scanning is in progress.	Clear the jam. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw)" on page 365

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easy to resolve. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

- The power cord is connected to the printer, and to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The printer is turned on.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- For the DocuPrint M205 fw, when connected to the computer with the Wireless connection, the Ethernet cable is not connected between the printer and the network.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

Display Problems

Problem	Action
After the printer is turned on, the display on the LCD panel is blank, keeps showing the Fuji Xerox logo, or the back light is not lit.	Turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and turn on the printer. Self Test Message appears on the LCD panel. When the test is completed, the <code>Select Function</code> screen is displayed.
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the print driver, or the printer utilities have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel. Change the menu settings from the print driver or the printer utilities instead of the operator panel.

Printing Problems

Problem	Action
Printer stops during print job.	<p>Check if the message appears on the LCD panel or the SimpleMonitor. If the "Cooling Down Wait for a few minutes" message appears, the printer is cooling down because the printer temperature is too high. Please wait a few minutes.</p> <p>After the printer cools down, the printing will restart.</p>
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	<p>Ensure that the <code>Select Function</code> screen appears on the LCD panel before you send a job to print.</p> <p>Ensure that print media is loaded in the printer.</p> <p>Verify that you are using the correct print driver.</p> <p>Ensure that you are using the correct Ethernet or USB cable and that it is securely connected to the printer. (Ethernet connection is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)</p> <p>Verify that the correct print media size is selected.</p> <p>If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.</p> <p>For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, check the interface of your printer from <code>Admin Menu</code>.</p> <p>Determine the host interface you are using. Print a System Settings page to verify that the current interface settings are correct. Refer to "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 182 for details on how to print a System Settings page.</p>
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur.	<p>Ensure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Usable Print Media" on page 144 <p>Fan the print media before loading it.</p> <p>Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.</p> <p>Ensure that the paper width guides and length guide are adjusted correctly.</p> <p>Ensure that the paper cover is securely inserted.</p> <p>Do not overfill the print media sources.</p> <p>Do not force print media into the PSI or the MPF when you load it. Otherwise, it may skew or buckle.</p> <p>Ensure that the print media is not curled.</p> <p>Load the recommended print side correctly for the type of print media you are using.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Loading Print Media" on page 147 <p>Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.</p> <p>Do not mix print media types.</p> <p>Do not mix print media sizes.</p> <p>Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.</p> <p>Load a print media source only when it is empty.</p>

Problem	Action
The envelope is creased after printing.	Ensure that the envelope is loaded as instructed in " Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF) " on page 153 or " Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI) " on page 159.
Page breaks in unexpected places.	Increase the value for Job Time-Out in the System Settings menu, that is on the Printer Maintenance tab in the Printer Setting Utility. For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, increase the time-out value in the Protocol Settings menu on CentreWare Internet Services.
Print media does not stack neatly in the center output tray.	Turn the print media stack over in the PSI and MPF.
Printer does not duplex pages.	Select Flip on Short Edge or Flip on Long Edge from the Duplex menu on the Paper/Output tab in the print driver.

Print Quality Problems

This section includes:

- ["The Output Is Too Light" on page 381](#)
- ["Toner Smears or Print Comes Off/Stain on Back Side" on page 382](#)
- ["Random Spots/Blurred Images" on page 383](#)
- ["The Entire Output Is Blank" on page 384](#)
- ["Streaks Appear on the Output" on page 385](#)
- ["Mottle" on page 386](#)
- ["Ghosting" on page 387](#)
- ["Fog" on page 388](#)
- ["Bead-Carry-Out \(BCO\)" on page 389](#)
- ["Auger Mark" on page 390](#)
- ["Wrinkled/Stained Paper" on page 391](#)
- ["The Top Margin Is Incorrect" on page 392](#)
- ["Protrudent/Bumpy Paper" on page 393](#)

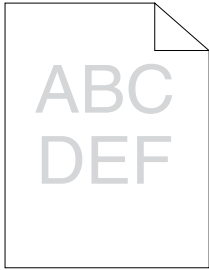
NOTE:

- In this section, some procedures use the Printer Setting Utility or SimpleMonitor. Some procedures that use the Printer Setting Utility can also be performed using the operator panel.

See also:

- ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 314](#)
- ["Printer Setting Utility \(Windows Only\)" on page 59](#)
- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 60](#)

■ The Output Is Too Light

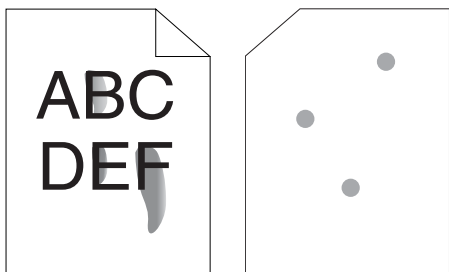


Problem	Action
The output is too light.	<p>The toner cartridge may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in the toner cartridge.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Check the toner level in the Consumables tab in the Printer Status window of the SimpleMonitor.<li>2 Replace the toner cartridge as necessary. <hr/> <p>Verify that the print media is dry and the correct print media is used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• "Usable Print Media" on page 144 <hr/> <p>Try changing the Paper Type setting in the print driver.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, change the Paper Type setting. <hr/> <p>Disable Toner Saving Mode in the print driver.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the Graphics tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, ensure that the Toner Saving Mode check box is not selected.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Toner Smears or Print Comes Off/Stain on Back Side

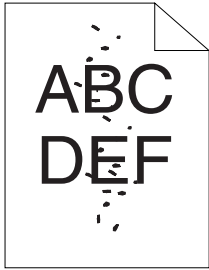


Problem	Action
Toner smears or print comes off. The output has stain on the back side.	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the Paper Type setting in the print driver. For example, change Plain to Lightweight Cardstock. 1 On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, change the Paper Type setting.
	Verify that the correct print media is being used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Usable Print Media" on page 144
	Adjust the temperature of the fusing unit. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust Fusing Unit on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media. 3 Click the Apply New Settings button.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Random Spots/Blurred Images

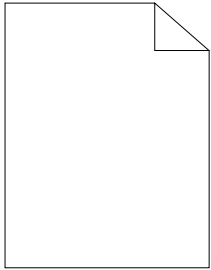


Problem	Action
The printed result has random spots or is blurred.	<p>Ensure that the toner cartridge is installed correctly.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 428 <hr/> <p>If you use a non-genuine brand toner cartridge, install a genuine brand toner cartridge.</p> <hr/> <p>Clean up the fusing unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over paper.<li>2 Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.

NOTE:

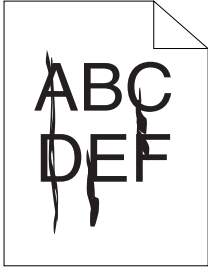
- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ The Entire Output Is Blank



If this trouble happens, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Streaks Appear on the Output



If this trouble happens, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

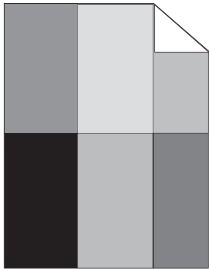
■ Mottle

Problem	Action
The printed result has mottled appearance.	Adjust the transfer bias. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, click Adjust BTR on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Adjust the setting for the type of print media being used. 3 Click the Apply New Settings button.
	If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Ghosting



Problem	Action
The printed result has ghosting.	<p>The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the Paper Type setting in the print driver. For example, change Plain to Lightweight Cardstock.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, change the Paper Type setting. <hr/> <p>Adjust the temperature of the fusing unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust Fusing Unit on the Printer Maintenance tab.<li>2 Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media.<li>3 Click the Apply New Settings button. <hr/> <p>If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p>

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Fog

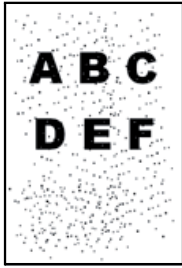


Problem	Action
The printed result is foggy.	When the whole is printed light, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer. When the printed page is partly light, start Clean Developer . 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Clean Developer on the Diagnosis tab. 2 Click the Start button.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)

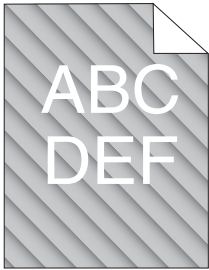


Problem	Action
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO) is happening.	<p>If the printer is installed in a high altitude location, set the altitude of the location.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust Altitude on the Printer Maintenance tab.2 Select the value close to the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.3 Click the Apply New Settings button.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Auger Mark

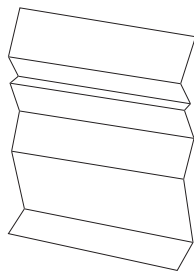


Problem	Action
The printed result has auger mark.	<p>The toner cartridge may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in the toner cartridge.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Check the toner level in the Consumables tab in the Printer Status window of the SimpleMonitor.2 Replace the toner cartridge as necessary. <hr/> <p>Start Clean Developer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Clean Developer on the Diagnosis tab.2 Click the Start button.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Wrinkled/Stained Paper

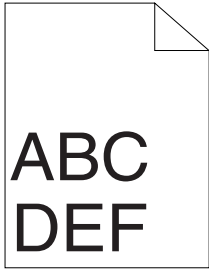


Problem	Action
The output is wrinkled. The output is stained.	Verify that the correct print media is being used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If excessive wrinkles occur, use paper or other media from a new package.
	See also:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Usable Print Media" on page 144• "About Print Media" on page 138
	If you use the envelope, check whether the crease is within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope.
	If the crease is within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope, this is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault.
	If not, take the following actions:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the envelope is Com 10, which is 220 mm or longer and has a flap on the long edge, use a different size envelope.• If the envelope is C5, which is 220 mm or longer and has a flap on the short edge, load it in the MPF with the flap open and facing up.• If the envelope is Monarch or DL, which is shorter than 220 mm, load it long edge feed in the MPF with the flap open and facing up. If the problem continues, use a different size envelope.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ The Top Margin Is Incorrect

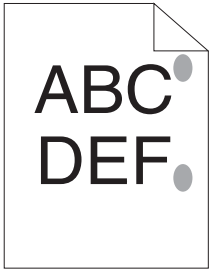


Problem	Action
The top margin is incorrect.	Ensure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Protrudent/Bumpy Paper



Problem	Action
Printed surface got protrudent/bumpy.	Clean up the fusing unit. <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over paper.2 Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.

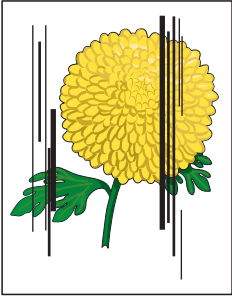
NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Copy Problem

Problem	Action
(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only) A document loaded in the ADF cannot be copied.	Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.

Copy Quality Problems

Problem	Action
<p>(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)</p> <p>There are lines or streaks in copies made from the ADF.</p> 	<p>There is debris on the ADF glass. When scanning, the paper from the ADF passes over the debris creating lines or streaks.</p> <p>Clean the ADF glass with a lint free cloth.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 421
<p>There are spots in copies taken from the document glass.</p>	<p>There is debris on the document glass. When scanning, the debris creates a spot on the image.</p> <p>Clean the document glass with a lint free cloth.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 421
<p>The reverse side of the original is showing on the copy.</p>	<p>On the Copy menu, enable <code>Auto Exposure</code>.</p> <p>For information on turning <code>Auto Exposure</code> on and off, see "Auto Exposure" on page 204.</p>
<p>Light colors are washed out or white on the copy.</p>	<p>On the Copy menu, disable <code>Auto Exposure</code>.</p> <p>For information on turning <code>Auto Exposure</code> on and off, see "Auto Exposure" on page 204.</p>
<p>Image is too light or dark.</p>	<p>Use the <code>Lighten/Darken</code> option on the Copy menu.</p> <p>For information on making the image lighter or darker, see "Lighten/Darken" on page 202.</p>

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Fax Problems (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again. Ensure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.
No dial tone sounds.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254 Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.
The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	Ensure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly. Print the Address Book List.
The document does not feed into the printer.	Ensure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin. Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.
Faxes are not received automatically.	Select <code>FAX Mode for Ans Select</code> . Ensure that there is paper in the PSI or the MPF. Check if the LCD panel shows <code>Memory Full</code> .
The printer does not send faxes.	Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor-quality.	The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty. Ask the sender to sort out the problem and resend the fax. A noisy phone line can cause line errors. Ask the sender to resend the fax. Check your printer by making a copy. The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Replacing the Toner Cartridge" on page 424
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam. Ask the sender to clear the document jam and resend the fax.
There are lines on the documents you send.	Check your ADF glass for marks and clean it. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 421
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Ask the sender to sort out the problem and retry.
Documents are not stored in the memory.	There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the LCD panel shows <code>Memory Full</code> , delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. Correct the paper settings. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Tray Settings" on page 348

Problem	Action
The printer will not send or receive faxes.	<p>Ensure that the region is set correctly.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Press the i (System) button. 2 Select <code>Admin Menu</code>, and then press the OK button. 3 Select <code>Fax Settings</code>, and then press the OK button. 4 Select <code>Region</code>, and then press the OK button. 5 When the setting is correct, press the ↶ (Back) button to return to the previous screen. <p>To change the setting, select the correct region and then press the OK button. Select <code>Yes</code> to reboot the printer.</p>
	<hr/> <p>Check that the phone line is connected properly.</p>
	<p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	<p>Reduce the modem speed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Press the i (System) button. 2 Select <code>Admin Menu</code>, and then press the OK button. 3 Select <code>Fax Settings</code>, and then press the OK button. 4 Select <code>Modem Speed</code>, and then press the OK button. 5 Select the desired menu item, and then press the OK button.

Scanning Problems

Problem	Action
The scanner does not work.	<p>Ensure that you place the document to be scanned face down on the document glass, or face up in the ADF. (ADF is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)</p> <p>There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the Preview function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate.</p> <p>Check that the USB cable is connected properly.</p> <p>Ensure that the USB cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable.</p> <p>Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.</p>
The printer scans very slowly.	<p>For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, graphics are scanned more slowly than text when using the Scan to E-Mail or Scan to Network feature.</p> <p>Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image.</p> <p>Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.</p>
(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only) Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the ADF.	<p>Ensure that the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Preparing a Document" on page 191• "Making Copies From the ADF (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)" on page 194 <p>Check whether the document is properly loaded in the ADF.</p> <p>Ensure that the document guides are adjusted properly.</p> <p>Ensure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the ADF.</p> <p>Ensure that the document is not curled.</p> <p>Fan the document well before loading it in the ADF.</p>
(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only) Vertical stripes appear on the output when scanned using the ADF.	<p>Clean the ADF glass.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 421
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	<p>Clean the document glass.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 421
Images are skewed.	<p>Ensure that the document is loaded straight in the ADF or on the document glass. (ADF is available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.)</p>
(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only) Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the ADF.	<p>If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.</p>

Problem	Action
<p>(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only)</p> <p>The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the Scan to E-Mail or Scan to Network feature.</p>	<p>Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the CentreWare Internet Services.</p> <p>Scan to E-Mail</p> <p>Check the following setting under Address Book → Personal Address:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Address <p>Scan to Network</p> <p>Check the following settings under Address Book → Computer/Server Address Book:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name (Displayed on Printer) • Network Type • Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name) • Port Number • Login Name (if required by host) • Login Password • Name of Shared Directory • Subdirectory Path (optional)
<p>Cannot scan using WIA on a Windows Server® 2003 computer.</p>	<p>Enable WIA on the computer.</p> <p>To enable WIA:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Click Start, point to Administrative Tools, and then click Services. 2 Right-click Windows Image Acquisition (WIA), and then click Properties to ensure that Startup type is set to Manual or Automatic. 3 Click OK. 4 Right-click Windows Image Acquisition (WIA), and then click Start.
<p>Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 computer.</p>	<p>Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer.</p> <p>To install Desktop Experience:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Click Start, point to Administrative Tools, and then click Server Manager. 2 Under Features Summary, click Add Features. 3 Select the Desktop Experience check box. 4 If a window appears, follow the on-screen instructions. 5 Click Next, and then click Install. 6 Restart the computer.

Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw only) Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable or Ethernet cable. Ensure that the printer is turned on. Ensure that the print driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the print driver.)
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable. Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again. If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
The scan driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from the Express Scan Manager.	Install the scan driver. If the driver is already installed, uninstall it and then reinstall it.
Failed to scan your document on the printer via the Express Scan Manager.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable. Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again. If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
Failed to create an image file via the Express Scan Manager.	Ensure that there is sufficient space in your hard disk. Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to initialize the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to execute the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
An unexpected error occurred on the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.

Other Problems

Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.

Understanding Printer Messages

The printer LCD panel displays messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This section describes error codes included in the messages, their meanings, and how to clear the messages.

IMPORTANT:

- When an error message is displayed, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer are not secured.

Error Code	What You Can Do
005-121	Open the ADF cover. Remove the jammed paper and then close the ADF cover. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">"Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw)" on page 365
005-301	Close the ADF cover.
010-397	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
016-315	
016-317	See also:
016-372	<ul style="list-style-type: none">"Online Services" on page 447
016-501	
016-502	
016-503	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the SMTP server setting is correct by contacting your server administrator.
016-504	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the user name and password for the POP3 server are set correctly by contacting your server administrator.
016-506	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the SMTP server address and e-mail destination are set correctly.
016-507	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the user name and password used for the SMTP server are set correctly by contacting your server administrator.
016-718	Press the OK button to clear the message. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-719	Press the OK button to cancel the current job. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-720	
016-744	Press the OK button to clear the message. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
016-745	
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">"Online Services" on page 447
016-749	Press the OK button to cancel the current job. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-764	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected. If this does not solve the problem, contact SMTP server administrator.
016-766	Press the OK button to clear the message. Ping the IP address of the SMTP server and check if the server is available. If this does not solve the problem, contact SMTP server administrator.
016-767	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the recipient address is correct, and try scanning again.
016-791	Insert the USB memory device and press the OK button to clear the message.

Error Code	What You Can Do
016-920	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check the wireless setting for the access point and the printer.
016-930	Remove the device from the USB drive and press the OK button to clear the message.
016-931	
016-981	Press the OK button to cancel the current job. Try copying fewer documents.
016-985	Attached file size is larger than you defined. Press the OK button to clear the message. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enlarge Max E-Mail Size. • Lower the resolution setting. • Change the file format of the scanned image.
017-970	Memory is likely to be full. Press the OK button to clear the message. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete the data stored in the memory. • Lower the resolution setting. • Reduce the number of pages.
017-980	Press the OK button to clear the message. Retry when the printer does not process any
017-981	job.
017-988	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected or your computer does not have any problem.
018-338	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 447
024-340	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
024-360	
024-371	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 447
024-958	Load the specified paper and press the OK button to clear the message.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 150 • "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 158
024-963	Load the specified paper and press the OK button to clear the message. Follow the on-screen instruction if one appears.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 150 • "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 158
026-720	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the USB memory device has enough memory.
026-721	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the USB memory device is write-protected or gets any disk problem.
026-722	
026-723	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the path and file name to save the data is too long.
026-750	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected, or restart the application you use.

Error Code	What You Can Do
026-751 026-752	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected.
031-521	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the access setting to the SMB server is correct by contacting your server administrator.
031-526	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the domain name of the SMB server is correct. Check DNS connection, or check if the name of the forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-529	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected and if the password for the SMB server is correct.
031-530	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the working path setting to the SMB server is correct.
031-533	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists. • If the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-534 031-535 031-536	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-537	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the storage location has free space.
031-555	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the network is properly connected.
031-556	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-557	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-558	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the access setting to the SMB server is correct by contacting your server administrator.
031-571	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected.
031-574	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the domain name of the FTP server is correct.
031-575	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the host name setting to the FTP server is correct.
031-576	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-578	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected and if login name (user name) and password for the FTP server are correct.
031-579	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the working path setting to the FTP server is correct.
031-582	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-584	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists. • If the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.

Error Code	What You Can Do
031-585	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any delete/write-protection or disk problem.
031-587	
031-588	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-589	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the storage location has free space.
031-594	Press the OK button to clear the message. Contact your server administrator to check if the scanned file has wrong setting while being stored to FTP server. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	See also:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 447
031-598	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
033-503	Press the OK button to clear the message. Retry, and check the report. Delete the unnecessary data stored in the memory.
033-513	
033-517	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the password of the fax lock is correct.
033-518	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if your region is set correctly.
033-519	Fax service is locked. To continue, press the OK button and disable the fax lock.
	See also:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 355
033-787	Press the OK button to clear the message. The job is cancelled.
033-788	Press the OK button to clear the message. Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.
034-700	Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:
034-701	
034-702	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the phone line is connected properly. • Check if the destination number is correct. • Set Number of Redial to the largest value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.
	See also:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254
034-703	Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:
034-704	
034-705	
034-706	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the phone line is connected properly. • Check if the destination number is available and correct. • Set Number of Redial to the largest value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.
	See also:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254
034-707	Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set Number of Redial to the largest value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Lower Modem Speed.

Error Code	What You Can Do
034-708	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set Number of Redial to the largest value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Lower Modem Speed. • Check if the destination number is available.
034-709	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set Number of Redial to the largest value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.
034-710	
034-711	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set Number of Redial to the largest value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Lower Modem Speed.
034-712	
034-713	
034-714	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set Number of Redial to the largest value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Check if the destination number is available.
034-715	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set Number of Redial to the largest value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Lower Modem Speed.
034-716	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, lower Modem Speed.</p>
034-717	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. Retry sending the fax.</p>
034-718	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, lower Modem Speed.</p>
034-719	
034-720	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lower Modem Speed. • Enable ECM.
034-721	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, lower Modem Speed.</p>
034-722	
034-723	
034-724	
034-725	
034-726	
034-727	<p>Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the destination number is available. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled.</p>


Error Code	What You Can Do
034-750	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254
034-751	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the destination machine blocks your fax as the junk fax. If it does, ask the receiver to disable the setting.
034-752	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly.
034-753	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254
034-754	Press the OK button to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed.
034-755	
034-756	
034-757	
034-758	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. Or, lower Modem Speed. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254
034-759	Press the OK button to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed.
034-760	
034-761	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254
034-762	Press the OK button to clear the message. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lower Modem Speed. • Enable ECM.
034-763	Press the OK button to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed.
034-764	
034-765	
034-766	
034-767	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 254
034-768	Press the OK button to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed.
041-340	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
042-358	
061-370	See also:
062-321	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 447
062-790	Press the OK button to clear the message. The scanned data is deleted. Retry scanning the document.
075-100	Check and clear the paper path, load the paper, and then press the OK button to clear the message. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer" on page 369

Error Code	What You Can Do
075-921	Load paper for the second side (odd) pages, and press the  button. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Manual Duplex Printing (Windows Print Driver Only)" on page 163
077-100	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper.
077-104	See also:
077-106	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer" on page 370
077-108	
077-109	
077-304	Close the rear cover.
077-900	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper.
077-901	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer" on page 370
091-402	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
092-651	
092-661	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 447
093-426	Replace the specified toner cartridge soon. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Replacing the Toner Cartridge" on page 424
093-926	Replace the specified toner cartridge with the supported one. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Replacing the Toner Cartridge" on page 424
093-933	Remove the specified toner cartridge and install a new one. If you do not replace the toner cartridge, print quality problems may occur. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Replacing the Toner Cartridge" on page 424
093-974	Turn off the printer, check if the toner cartridge is installed correctly, and then turn on the printer. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 447

Error Code	What You Can Do
116-210	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
116-314	
116-323	See also:
116-325	• "Online Services" on page 447
116-326	
116-335	
116-355	
116-395	
117-331	
117-332	
117-333	
117-334	
117-340	
117-342	
117-343	
117-344	
117-346	
117-348	Retry, and check the report. Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	See also:
	• "Online Services" on page 447
117-349	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
117-350	
117-351	See also:
117-366	• "Online Services" on page 447
124-333	
134-211	
191-310	

NOTE:

- As for the following message, which does not include an error code, refer to the table below for the solution.

Error Message	What You Can Do
USB Memory Error Cannot Mount File System Remove from USB Port	Remove the USB memory device and check if it is usable. Press the  button to clear the message.

Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message on the LCD panel.

You need to know the model of your printer and serial number. See the label on the rear cover of your printer.

Getting Help

This section includes:

- ["LCD Panel Messages" on page 412](#)
- ["SimpleMonitor Alerts" on page 413](#)
- ["Obtaining the Product Information" on page 414](#)

Fuji Xerox provides several automatic diagnostic tools to help you produce and maintain print quality.

■ LCD Panel Messages

The LCD panel provides you with information and troubleshooting help. When an error or warning condition occurs, the LCD panel displays a message informing you of the problem.

See also:

- ["Understanding Printer Messages" on page 402](#)

■ SimpleMonitor Alerts

The SimpleMonitor is a tool that is included on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. If the printer is unable to print your job, the SimpleMonitor automatically displays an alert on your computer screen to let you know that the printer needs attention.

■ Obtaining the Product Information

Obtaining the Latest Print Driver

The latest print driver can be obtained by downloading it from our web site.

NOTE:

- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

- 1** In your print driver's **Properties** dialog box, click the **Configuration** tab and then click **About**.
- 2** Click **Fuji Xerox Web Site**.
Your web browser launches and our web site is displayed.
- 3** Follow the instructions on the web site and download an appropriate print driver.

NOTE:

- The URL of the driver download service page is as follows: <http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>.
- For the latest information about the print driver features, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

Updating the Printer's Firmware

Our web site also provides a tool that allows you to update the printer's firmware (software embedded within the printer) from your computer.

The latest firmware and updating tool can be downloaded from the following URL.

Follow the instructions on the web site and download the correct firmware update.

<http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>

NOTE:

- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

Non-Genuine Mode

When toner within a toner cartridge is empty, the `Replace the toner cartridge` message appears.

When you want to use the printer in the Non-Genuine Mode, enable the Non-Genuine Mode and replace the toner cartridge.

IMPORTANT:

- If you use the printer in the Non-Genuine Mode, the performance of the printer may not be at its optimum. And any problems that may arise from the use of the Non-Genuine Mode are not covered by our quality guarantee. The continuous use of the Non-Genuine Mode can also cause the printer to break down, and any repair charges for such break down will be incurred by users.

NOTE:

- To disable the Non-Genuine Mode, select `Off for Non-Genuine Mode` on the operator panel or deselect the check box next to **On** on the **Non-Genuine Mode** page on the **Printer Maintenance** tab in the Printer Setting Utility.







This section includes:

- ["The Operator Panel" on page 416](#)
- ["The Printer Setting Utility" on page 417](#)

■ The Operator Panel

NOTE:

- Before starting the operation described below, confirm that the `Select Function` screen is displayed on the LCD panel.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu` and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Maintenance` and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Non-Genuine Mode` and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `On` and then press the  button.
- 6 Press the  button until the top page is displayed.
The printer switches to the Non-Genuine Mode.

■ The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Non-Genuine Mode** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Non-Genuine Mode** page is displayed.
- 4 Select the check box next to **On**, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Maintenance

This chapter includes:

- "Cleaning the Printer" on page 420
- "Replacing the Toner Cartridge" on page 424
- "Ordering Supplies" on page 430
- "Storing Consumables" on page 434
- "Managing the Printer" on page 435
- "Conserving Supplies" on page 439
- "Checking Page Counts" on page 440
- "Moving the Printer" on page 441

Cleaning the Printer

This section describes how to clean the printer in order to maintain it in good condition and print clean printouts all the time.

 **WARNING:**

- When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners, or it may catch fire and cause explosion.

 **CAUTION:**

- When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.

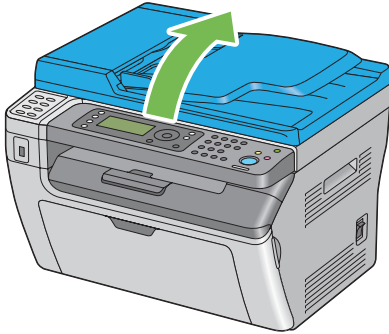
This section includes:

- ["Cleaning the Scanner" on page 421](#)
- ["Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 423](#)

■ Cleaning the Scanner

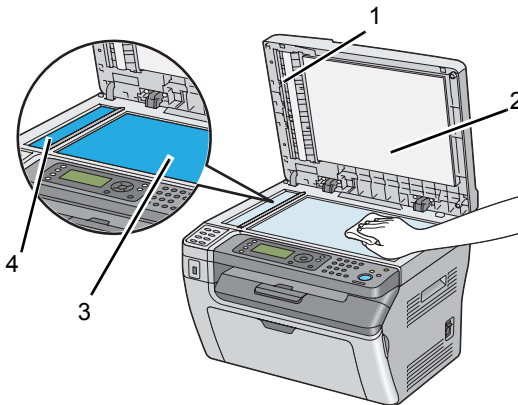
Keep the scanner clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

- 1 Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
- 2 Open the document cover.



- 3 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, wipe the surface of the document glass and ADF glass until they are clean and dry.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, wipe the surface of the document glass until it is clean and dry.

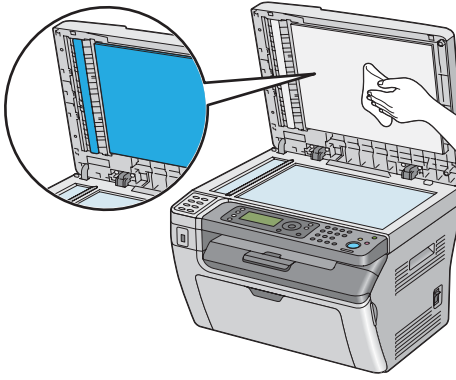


-
- | | |
|----|----------------------|
| 1* | Film |
| 2 | White Document Cover |
| 3 | Document Glass |
| 4* | ADF Glass |
-

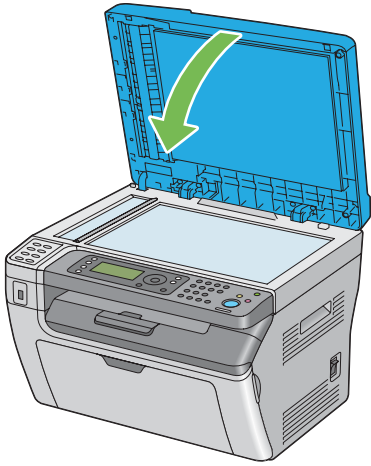
*Available only on the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw.

- 4 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, wipe the underside of the white document cover and film until they are clean and dry.

For the DocuPrint M205 b, wipe the underside of the white document cover until it is clean and dry.



5 Close the document cover.



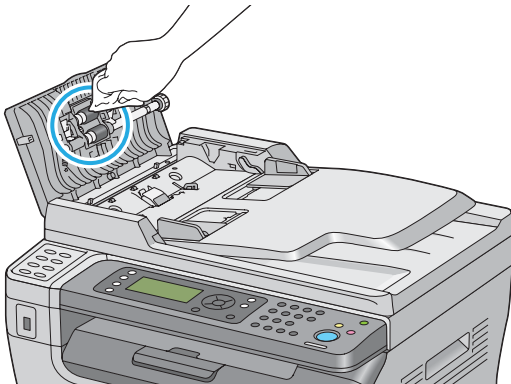
■ Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

Keep the ADF feed roller clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the ADF feed roller at regular intervals.

- 1 Open the ADF cover.



- 2 Wipe the ADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.
If the ADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the ADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the ADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.



Replacing the Toner Cartridge

Fuji Xerox toner cartridges are available only through Fuji Xerox.

It is recommended that you use a Fuji Xerox toner cartridge for your printer. Fuji Xerox does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using consumables not supplied by Fuji Xerox.

WARNING:

- **Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off spilled toner. Never use a vacuum cleaner for the spills. It may catch fire by electric sparks inside the vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.**
- **Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion. If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.**

CAUTION:

- **Keep toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.**
- **When replacing toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.**
- **If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water. If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary. If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water. If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.**

IMPORTANT:

- Do not shake the used toner cartridge to avoid spilling of the toner.

This section includes:

- ["Overview" on page 425](#)
- ["Removing the Toner Cartridge" on page 426](#)
- ["Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 428](#)

■ Overview

The printer has one color toner cartridge: black (K).

When a toner cartridge reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
093-426 Printer Toner Cartridge is Close to Life* ¹	Approx. 200 pages* ²	The toner cartridge has become low. Prepare a new one.
Replace the toner cartridge 093-933 Or check that the cartridge is correctly set	—	The toner cartridge has become empty. Replace the old toner cartridge with a new one.

*¹ This warning appears only when Fuji Xerox toner cartridge is used (Non-Genuine Mode is set to off at the Printer Setting Utility).

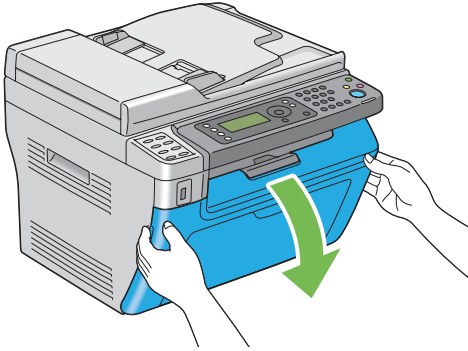
*² When a high capacity toner cartridge is set, the remaining page yield is approx. 400 pages.

IMPORTANT:

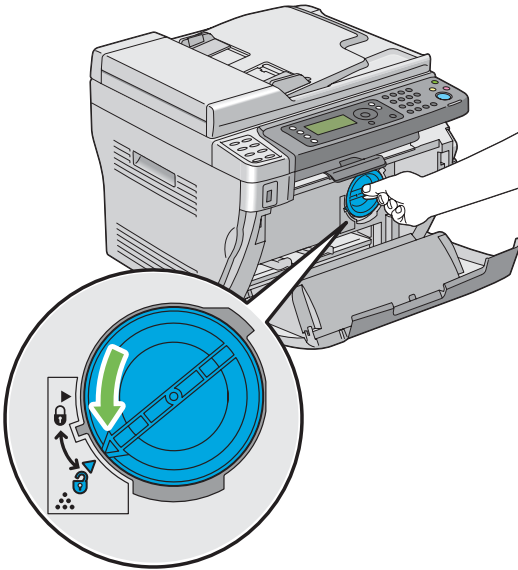
- When placing a used toner cartridge on the floor or on a table, place a few sheets of paper under the toner cartridge to catch any toner that may spill.
- Do not reuse old toner cartridges once you remove them from the printer. Doing so can impair print quality.
- Do not shake or pound the used toner cartridges. The remaining toner may spill.
- We recommend you to use up the toner cartridges within one year after removing them from the packaging.

■ Removing the Toner Cartridge

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Open the toner access cover.



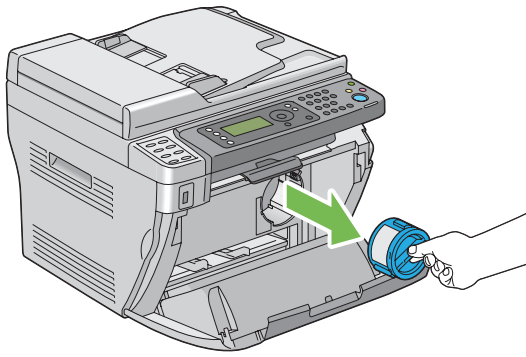
- 3 Spread a few sheets of paper on the floor or table where the removed toner cartridge is placed.
- 4 Turn the toner cartridge counterclockwise to unlock.



- 5 Pull the toner cartridge out.

IMPORTANT:

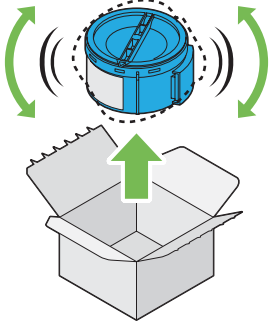
- Do not touch the shutter of the used toner cartridge.
- Always pull the toner cartridge out slowly so you do not spill any toner.



- 6 Place the toner cartridge slowly on the sheets of paper spread in step 3.

■ Installing a Toner Cartridge

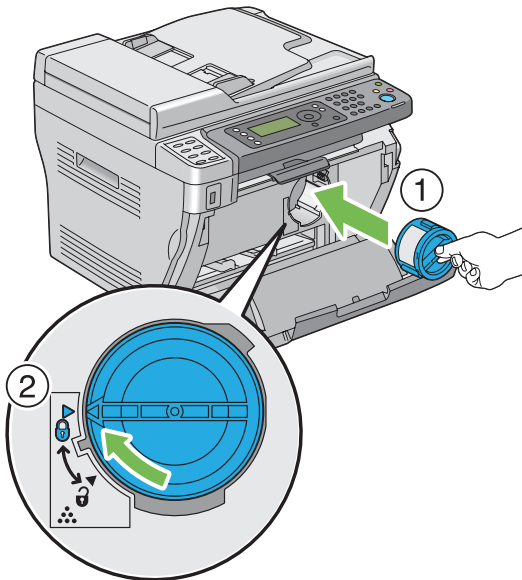
- 1 Unpack a new toner cartridge and shake it five times to distribute the toner evenly.



NOTE:

- Handle the toner cartridge carefully to avoid spilling of the toner.

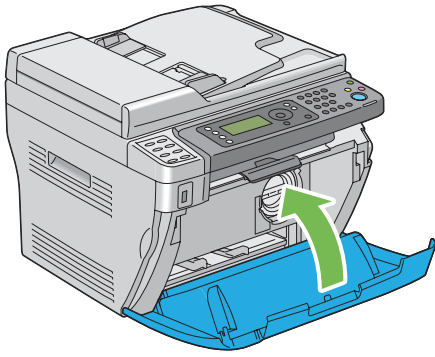
- 2 Adjust the toner cartridge to the cartridge holder, and then turn it clockwise to align to the lock mark.



IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to set the toner cartridge firmly before printing. Otherwise, it may cause some defects.

- 3 Close the toner access cover.



- 4** Pack the removed toner cartridge in the box in which the installed toner cartridge was packed up.
- 5** Take care not to contact with the spilled toner and remove the sheets of paper spread under the removed toner cartridge.

Ordering Supplies

This section includes:

- ["Consumables" on page 431](#)
- ["When to Order a Toner Cartridge" on page 432](#)
- ["Recycling Supplies" on page 433](#)

The toner cartridge needs to be ordered occasionally. The toner cartridge includes installation instructions on the box.

■ Consumables

IMPORTANT:

- Use of consumables not recommended by Fuji Xerox can impair machine quality and performance. Use only consumables recommended by Fuji Xerox.

Product Name	Product Code	Printable Number of Pages
Toner Cartridge - Standard Capacity	CT201609	Approx. 1,000 pages
Toner Cartridge - High Capacity	CT201610	Approx. 2,200 pages

IMPORTANT:

- The number of printable pages are applicable when A4 plain paper SEF (☐) is used and printing is done continuously in the print ratio of 5% in image density. Also, it satisfies the public values on the basis of JIS X6931 (ISO/IEC 19752). These values are estimates and vary depending on conditions such as the content being printed, paper size, paper type, the printer's operating environment, initializing process done when you turn on or off the printer, and adjustments to maintain print quality.

NOTE:

- The printable number of pages for the starter toner cartridge shipped with the printer is approximately 1,000 pages.
- Each toner cartridge includes installation instructions on the box.

■ When to Order a Toner Cartridge

The LCD panel displays a warning when the toner cartridge nears its replacement time. Verify that you have a replacement on hand. It is important to order a toner cartridge when the message first appears to avoid interruptions to your printing. The LCD panel displays an error message when the toner cartridge must be replaced.

To order a toner cartridge, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

IMPORTANT:

- This printer is designed to provide the most stable performance and print quality when used with the recommended toner cartridge. Not using the toner cartridge recommended for this machine degrades the performance and printing quality of the printer. You could also incur charges if the machine breaks down. To receive customer support and achieve the optimum performance of the printer, be sure to use recommended toner cartridge.

■ Recycling Supplies

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) to make recycle parts, recycle materials or energy recovery.
- Proper disposal is required for toner cartridges no longer needed. Do not open toner cartridges containers. Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 40 °C (140 °F).
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- An environment with salty air.

Managing the Printer

This section includes:

- ["Checking or Managing the Printer with CentreWare Internet Services \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 436](#)
- ["Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 437](#)
- ["Checking Printer Status Through E-mail \(DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only\)" on page 438](#)

■ Checking or Managing the Printer with CentreWare Internet Services (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

When the printer is installed in a TCP/IP environment, you can check printer status and configure settings using a web browser on a network computer. You can also use CentreWare Internet Services to check the remaining volume of consumables and the paper loaded in this printer.

NOTE:

- When using the printer as a local printer, you cannot use CentreWare Internet Services. For details about checking the status of a local printer, refer to "[Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)](#)" on [page 437](#).

Starting CentreWare Internet Services

Use the following procedure to start CentreWare Internet Services.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The CentreWare Internet Services page appears.

• Using Online Help

For details regarding the items that can be set in each CentreWare Internet Services page, click the **Help** button to display the online Help.

■ Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

SimpleMonitor is a tool that is installed with your print driver. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. SimpleMonitor can also check the status of the tray and remaining amount of the toner cartridge.

Starting SimpleMonitor

Double-click the SimpleMonitor icon on the taskbar or right-click the icon and select **Printer Selection**.

If the SimpleMonitor icon is not displayed on the taskbar, open SimpleMonitor from the **start** menu.

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® XP as an example.

- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **SimpleMonitor-Btype for Asia-Pacific**.

The **Printer Selection** window appears.

- 2 Click the name of the desired printer from the list.

The **Printer Status** window appears.

For details about the functions of SimpleMonitor, refer to the Help of SimpleMonitor.

See also:

- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 60](#)

■ Checking Printer Status Through E-mail (DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw Only)

When connected in a network environment where sending and receiving of e-mail is possible, the printer can send an e-mail report to specified e-mail addresses containing the following information:

- The network settings and the printer status
- The error status which has occurred on the printer

Setting the E-mail Environment

Activate CentreWare Internet Services. On the **Properties** tab, configure the following settings according to your e-mail environment. After configuring the settings on each screen, always click **Apply** and then turn off/on the printer to reboot. For details about each item, refer to the Help on CentreWare Internet Services.

Item	Item to be configured	Description
General Setup > StatusMessenger	Recipient's E-mail Address	Set the e-mail address to which notices about changes in printer status or errors are sent.
	Notification Items	Set the contents of the notices to send in the e-mail.
Port Status	StatusMessenger	Select Enabled .
Protocol Settings > E-mail	SMTP Server Settings	Select appropriate settings for sending and receiving e-mail.
	• Machine's E-mail Address	
	• SMTP Server Address	
	• SMTP Server Port Number	
	Send Authentication	
	• E-Mail Send Authentication	
	• Login Name	
	• Password	
	• Re-enter Password	
	• SMTP Server Connection Status	
	POP3 Server Settings	
	• POP3 Server Address	
	• POP3 Server Port Number	
• Login Name		
• Password		
• Re-enter Password		
StatusMessenger Password		
• Password		
• Re-enter Password		

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your print driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	Toner Saving Mode in the Graphics tab of the print driver	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. When this feature is used, the image quality will be lower than when it is not used.
Print media	Multiple Up in the Layout tab of the print driver	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. The available numbers that each print driver can print one sheet of paper are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Microsoft Windows Print Driver: 2, 4, 8, or 16 pages• Mac OS® X Print Driver: 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages Combined with the duplex setting, Multiple Up allows you to print up to 32 pages on one sheet of paper. (16 images on the front and 16 on the back)

Checking Page Counts

The total number of printed pages can be checked by printing a System Settings page. The total number of printed pages is shown on the Print Volume section, classified by paper sizes.

Single side print (including Multiple Up) is counted as one job, and 2-sided print (including Multiple Up) is counted as two. During 2-sided printing, if an error occurs after one side is printed properly, it is counted as one.

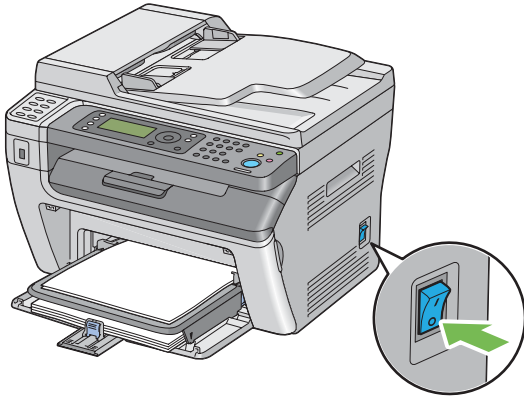
When doing 2-sided printing, a blank page may be inserted automatically depending on the settings of the application. In this case, the blank page is counted as one page. However, when doing 2-sided printing for odd number of pages, the blank page inserted to the rear side of the last odd page is not counted.

NOTE:

- Refer to "[Printing a System Settings Page](#)" on page 182 for details on how to print a System Settings page.

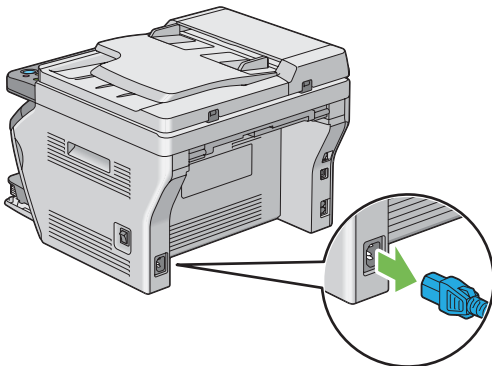
Moving the Printer

- 1 Turn off the printer.



- 2 For the DocuPrint M205 f/M205 fw, disconnect the power cord, interface cable, and any other cables.

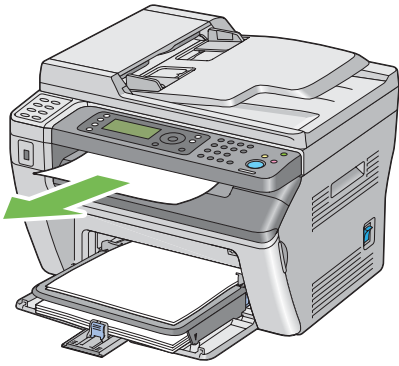
For the DocuPrint M205 b, disconnect the power cord and the USB cable, and go to step 4.



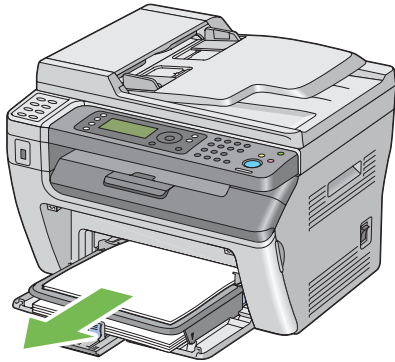
- 3 Remove any paper in the document output tray.



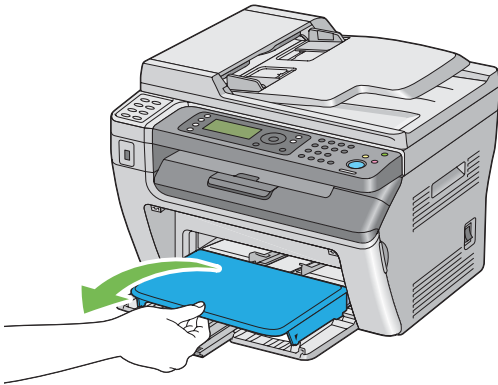
- 4 Remove any paper in the center output tray if there is. Close the output tray extension if it is extended.



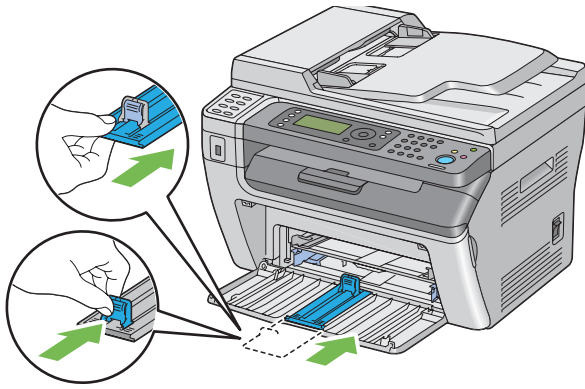
- 5** Remove any paper in the priority sheet inserter (PSI) or multipurpose feeder (MPF). Keep the paper wrapped and away from humidity and dirt.



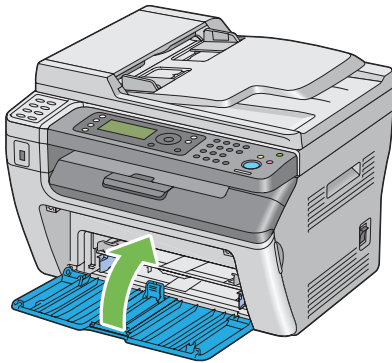
- 6** Remove the paper cover.



- 7** Slide the slide bar and the length guide backward until each of them stops.



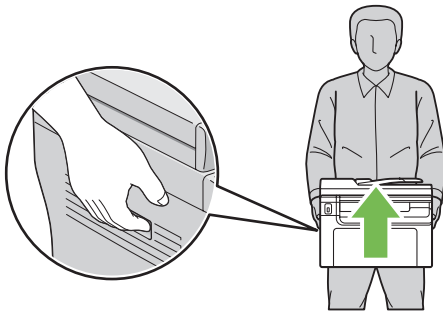
8 Close the front cover.



9 Lift the printer and move it gently.

NOTE:

- If the printer is to be moved over a long distance, the toner cartridge should be removed to prevent toner from spilling and the printer should be packed inside a box.



Contacting Fuji Xerox

This chapter includes:

- ["Technical Support" on page 446](#)
- ["Online Services" on page 447](#)

Technical Support

Fuji Xerox recommends the Customer first utilize support materials shipped with the product, product diagnostics, information contained on the Web, and email support. If unsuccessful, to obtain service under product warranty the Customer must notify Fuji Xerox Telephone Support or its authorized service representative of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period. Customer will provide appropriate assistance to Telephone Support personnel to resolve issues, such as restoration of the operating system, software program and drivers to their default configuration and settings, verification of functionality of Fuji Xerox supplied products, replacement of customer replaceable units, clearing paper misfeeds and cleaning the unit and other prescribed routine and preventative maintenance.

If the Customer's product contains features that enable Fuji Xerox or its authorized service representative to diagnose and repair problems with the product remotely, Fuji Xerox may request that the Customer allow such remote access to the product.

Online Services

You can find detail Product and Consumable warranty information and activate your warranty by registering your details on our website at <http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/>

Fuji Xerox Online Support Assistant provides instructions and troubleshooting guides to resolve your printer problems. It is an easy-to-use, searchable online Help. To find out more, please visit our online support at <http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/>

Index

Symbols

button 46

A

Address Book 315
Address Book button 46
Address Book Editor 63
ADF Cover 43, 44, 364
ADF Glass 44, 421
Adjust Altitude 336
Adjust BTR 333
Adjust Fusing Unit 334
Admin Menu 317
Alert Tone 331
Ans Select 307, 323
Ans/FAX Mode 307
Applicable Lines 37
Auto Ans. Ans/FAX 307, 323
Auto Ans. TEL/FAX 307, 323
Auto Answer Fax 307, 323
Auto Exposure 204, 341, 344
Auto Reset 330
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) 41, 44
Automatic Redialing 271
Avoiding jam 363

B

Back button 46
Basic Printer Problems 376
Black-and-White
 Selecting for scanning 250

C

C (Clear) button 45, 46
CA (Clear All) button 45
Canceling a job 173
Canceling print job
 From computer 173
 From operator panel 173
Center Output Tray 41, 42
CentreWare Internet Services 57, 322
 Managing printer 436
 Online help for 436
 Starting 436
Clean Developer 334
Clearing jam 362
Clearing paper jam

From ADF 365
From back of the printer 370
From center output tray 372
From front of the printer 369

Clock Mode 260
Clock Settings 331
Coding Method 36
Collated 197, 339
Color 343
 Adjusting for Thin Paper Originals 251
 Selecting for scanning 250
Company Name 308, 326
Configuring wireless settings (Mac OS X) 128
Configuring wireless settings (Windows) 88
Connecting printer 69
Connection specifications 69
Connection type 69
Connectivity 33, 34
Conserving supplies 439
Consumables 431
Contacting Service 410
Continuous Copy 31
Continuous Copy Speed 31
Continuous Print Speed 33
Copy
 Limiting access to 355
Copy button/LED 45
Copy Problem 394
Copy Quality
 Problems 395
Counter Reset 336

D

Data LED 45
Delayed Start 347
Demo Page 315
Density Adjustment 334
Dialing Type 307, 324
Dimensions 32
Direct Fax 273
Discard Size 308, 328
Display Problems 377
Document Cover 42, 44
Document Feeder Tray 41, 44
Document Glass 42, 44, 421
Document Guides 44
Document Output Tray 41
Document Size 37, 200, 340, 344
Document Type 201, 265, 341, 346

DRPD Mode 307
DRPD Pattern 308, 327

E

ECM 308, 328
Edit From Field 338
Electrical Safety 16
Empty Toner Alert Msg 425
Energy Saver button/LED 45
Envelope 333, 334
Error and Warning Messages 413
Error History 315
Error LED 45
Ethernet Port 43, 69
Express Scan Manager 64
Extel Hook Thresh 308, 328

F

F/W Version 333
Fault Time-Out 330
Fax
 Limiting access to 355
Fax Activity 308, 315, 329
Fax Broadcast 308, 329
Fax button/LED 46
Fax Cover Page 308, 326
Fax Problems 396
Fax Transmit 308
File Format 343
Film 421
First Copy Output Time 30
Front Cover 41, 42

G

Getting help 411
 SimpleMonitor Alerts 413
Gray Balance 341
Group Dial 317
Group Dialing 293

H

Halftone 30
HDD 30

I

Image Compression 345
Images
 Setting color mode 250
Initialize NVM 335
Installing a toner cartridge 428
Interval Timer 307, 324

J

Jam 375
Job History 315
Job Status button/LED 45
Job Time-Out 331
Junk Fax Filter 307, 325

L

Labels 333, 334
Launcher 61
LCD 45
LCD Panel 46
LCD Panel Messages 412
Length Guide 41, 42
Levers 43
Light Card 333, 334
Lighten/Darken 202, 266, 341, 344, 346
Line Monitor 307, 324
Line Type 307, 324
Liquid Crystal Display 45
Loading envelope
 MPF 153
 PSI 159
Loading print media 147
 MPF 150
 PSI 158
Low Toner Alert Msg 332, 425
LPD 322

M

Machine Weight 32
Main components 40
Managing
 Printer 435
Manual Duplex Printing 163
Margin Left/Right 208, 342, 345
Margin Middle 209, 342, 345
Margin Top/Bottom 207, 342, 345
Max E-Mail Size 346
Memory 30
Messages
 SimpleMonitor 413
Meter Readings 316
mm / inch 332
Modem Speed 308, 328
Mottle 386
Moving
 Printer 441
Multiple Up 205, 342, 439
Multipurpose feeder (MPF) 41, 42, 364

N

Network 317

Network connection setup 87
Non-Genuine Mode 335, 415
Number of copies 196
Number of Fax Lines 36
Number of Redial 307, 325
Numeric keypad 45

O

Obtaining the Product Information 414
OK button 46
One-touch buttons 45
Operating System 33, 37
Operator Panel 41, 42
Ordering supplies 432
Original Paper Size 30, 34
Original size
 Setting for scanning 251
Originals
 Printed on Thin Paper 251
Output Paper Size 30
Output Paper Weight 30
Output Tray Capacity 31
Output Tray Extension 41, 42, 167

P

Panel Language 351
Panel Lock 337, 352
Panel Settings 315
Panel Settings Page 49
Paper
 Thin Originals 251
Paper Chute 43
Paper Cover 41, 42
Paper Feed Roller 43
Paper Jam Location 364
 Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Cover 364
 Center Output Tray 364
 Front Cover 364
 Levers 364
 Multipurpose feeder (MPF) 364
 Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI) 364
 Rear Cover 364
 Transfer Drum 364
Paper Tray Capacity 31
Paper Width Guides 41, 42, 151
Parts name 40
PDL 33
Peer-to-peer 123
Phone Book 317
Phone Connector 43, 69
Phone Number 308
Plain 333, 334

Point and Print 120
Port 9100 322
Postcard 333, 334
Power Connector 43
Power Consumption 32
Power On Wizard 332
Power Saving Timer 330, 356
Power Supply 31
Power Switch 41, 42
Prefix 309
Prefix Dial 308, 309, 327
Prefix Dial Num 308, 327
Print button/LED 46
Print driver (Mac OS X)
 Installing print driver 127
Print driver (Windows)
 Installing print driver 82
Print driver pre-install status 83
Print Media 439
 Dimensions 149
Print Quality Problems 380
Print Resolution 33
Printer
 Managing 435
 Moving 441
Printer connection 67
Printer Messages 402
Printer Setting Utility 59
Printer software 55
Printer status
 StatusMessenger 438
Printing 171
 Custom Paper 179
 With Mac OS X driver 180
 With Windows print driver 180
Printing Basics 137
Printing from computer 172
Printing Problems 378
Printing Resolution 30
Printing with WSD 186
Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI) 41, 42
Product Features 28
Protocol 33
Protocol Monitor 315

R

Rear Cover 43, 364
Rear Cover Handle 43
Recording Paper Size 36
Recycled 333, 334
Recycling supplies 433
Redial Delay 307, 325
Redial/Pause button 45
Reduce/Enlarge 198, 340

- Reduction/Enlargement 31
- Region 308, 329
- Remote Rcv Tone 307, 325
- Remote Receive 307, 325
- Removing the toner cartridge 426
- Report Page 182
- Reset Wireless 321
- Resetting to factory defaults 357
- Resolution 264, 343, 346
 - Setting for scanning 251
- Ring Tone Volume 307, 324
- Ringer Volume 304

S

- safety
 - electrical 16
 - operational 21
- Scan button/LED 45
- Scan to e-mail 35
- Scan to Network 343
- Scan to PC 35
- Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems 400
- Scanning
 - Black-and-white images 250
 - Color images 250
 - Limiting access to 355
 - Scan resolution 251
 - Setting color mode 250
 - Setting image file type 250
 - Specifying original size 251
 - Suppress background color 251
- Scanning Halftone 34
- Scanning Problems 398
- Scanning Resolution 30, 34, 36
- Scanning Speed 34
- Secure Receive 338
- Secure Settings 336
- Send Document Size 36
- Send Header 307, 325
- Sending a fax 261
- Sending a fax automatically 268
- Sending a fax manually 269
- Service Lock 337
- Setting copy options 195
- Setting the printer ID 258
- Setting the time and date 259
- Setting your region 257
- Sharpness 203, 341, 344
- SimpleMonitor Alerts 413
- Slide Bar 41, 42
- SNMP 322
- Software installation 67
- Space Requirement 32
- Speaker Volume 303

- Specifications 29
- Speed Dial 317
- Speed Dial button 45
- Start button 45
- Status 318
- StatusMessenger 322
 - Checking printer status 438
 - Configuring 438
- Stop button 45
- Storing consumables 434
- Supplies
 - Recycling 433
 - When to Order 432
- System button/LED 45
- System Settings 315

T

- TCP/IP 321
- TEL Mode 307
- TEL/FAX Mode 307
- TIFF File Format 345
- Toner Access Cover 41, 42
- Toner Cartridges
 - Conserving 439
 - When to order 432
- Toner Refresh 334
- Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN) 216
- Total Page Counts 440
- Transfer Drum 43, 364
- Transfer Roller 43
- Transmission Mode 36
- Transmission Resolution 37
- Transmission Speed 36, 37
- Transmission Time 36
- Tray Settings 348

U

- USB Drive 41, 42
- USB Port 43, 69
- USB Settings
 - Port Status 338
- USB storage device 244

W

- Wall Jack Connector 43, 69, 255
- Warm-up Time 30
- White Document Cover 421
- Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) 218
- Wired Network
 - Ethernet 318
 - Initialize NVM 322
 - Protocol 322
- Wireless Setup 319

Your Fax Number 326 **Y**